	~						
•••••	 						
 ••••							
						••••	
							••••
						••••	••••
				 •••••	•••••	••••	••••
		ē					
•••••			 •••••	 •••••			

IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System Control Programming Reference Manual

Program Number 5702-SC1

GC21-7512-6

PREFACE

This manual provides the new programmer with the information he needs to run programs on the IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System and to use the system utility programs for doing jobs such as preparing disks for use or updating system libraries. This information is divided into two parts:

- Part I operation control language (OCL) statements needed to run programs in the Disk System.
- Part II system utility programs and utility control statements needed to run them. Programming support for the 5445 Disk, 3410/3411 Magnetic Tape Subsystem, Overlay Linkage Editor and Checkpoint/Restart features is not included on the distribution disk cartridge unless ordered by the user.

Note: In this publication there are some references to support of 64K bytes of main storage. A System/3 Model 10 with a 64K processing unit is available only as an RPO. Your IBM Marketing Representative can provide information about this.

Related Publications

Publications that are related (not prerequisites) to this one are:

- IBM System/3 Disk System Introduction, GC21-7510
- IBM System/3 Disk System RPG II Reference Manual, SC21-7504
- IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System Operator's Guide, GC21-7508
- IBM System/3 Disk System Halt Guide, GC21-7540
- IBM System/3 Disk System RPG II and System Additional Topics Programmer's Guide, GC21-7511
- IBM System/3 Disk Concepts and Planning Guide, GC21-7571
- IBM System/3 Subset American National Standard COBOL Compiler and Library Programmer's Guide, SC28-6459
- IBM System/3 Disk FORTRAN IV Reference Manual, SC28-6874

Seventh Edition (September 1973)

This is a major revision of and obsoletes GC21-7512-5, and Technical Newsletter GN21-7676. A new disk utility (\$DCOPY) has been added. It allows the user to copy or dump the entire contents of a disk onto tape or tape onto disk. (This program is distributed with the magnetic tape feature of the SCP).

All references to consecutive organized disk files have been changed to sequential. The FILE AND VOLUME LABEL DISPLAY PROGRAM (\$LABEL) prints an S for sequential disk files, when displaying VTOC. Other minor changes are indicated by a vertical line at the left of the change.

This edition applies to version 09, modification level 00 of the IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System and to all subsequent versions and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions or Technical Newsletters. Changes are continually made to the specifications herein; before using this publication in connection with the operation of IBM Systems, consult the latest IBM System/3 Newsletter, Order Number GN20-2228 for the editions that are applicable and current.

Requests for copies of IBM publications should be made to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.

A form for reader's comments is provided at the back of this piblication. If the form has been removed, comments may be addressed to IBM Corporation, Publications, Department 245, Rochester, Minnesota 55901.

©Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1969, 1970, 1971, 1972, 1973

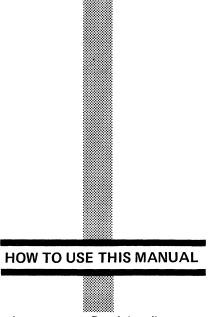
CONTENTS

HOW TO USE THIS MA	NUA	L	•	•	•	•			•	•	iii
PART I. OCL STATEM	IENT	s.	•		•	•		•	•	•	1
INTRODUCTION TO C		TA	TEN	٨E٢	NTS						3
What is OCL?											3
OCL and the Job Str								÷			4
Organization of Part I					•	•	•	•	•	•	4
CODING RULES .											5
				•							5
Statement Identifier	s.			•							5
Parameters											5
General Coding Rules											6
Statements Beginnin	g wit	h //									6
Statements Beginnin	g wit	h Oi	ther	Th	an ,	//					7
Continuation.											7
Comments											8
STATEMENT DESCRI	סודנ	NC									~
DATE Statement			•	·	·	·	·	·	•	·	9
	•••	·		•	·	•	·	·	·	٠	16
LOAD Statement .	• •	•	•	•	·	·	•	·	•	٠	17
RUN Statement	• •	·	·	•	•	•	·	·	·	•	20
SWITCH Statement .	• •	•	·	٠	•	·	٠	·	•	٠	21
COMPILE Statement	• •	•	•	•	·	·	٠	·	•	٠	22
	• •	•	·	•	•	•	·	·	·	٠	24
FORMS Statement .	• •	·	·	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	27
LOG Statement	• •	•	·	·	•	٠	•	•	•	•	28
	• •	•	•	•	•	•	·	•	•	•	29
PUNCH Statement .		•	•	•	•	•	•	•		•	30
		•	•	•		•	•				31
		•	•	•		•	•	•		•	31
*(Comment) Statement								•			31
PAUSE Statement .							•				32
/& Statement											32
/* Statement											32
DISK FILE Statement											33
TAPE FILE Statement											43
BSCA Statement											50
CALL Statement											51
PARTITION Statement											52
LOCKOUT Statement											52
Procedures											53
											54
Nested Procedures											55
USING OCL											59
Compiling an RPG II Pr											60
Creating a Disk File .	-			÷							60
Loading and Running P										·	61
IBM Programs				÷		÷			•	•	61
Object Programs Usi							:	÷	•	:	61
Object Programs Usi	-					•	•	:	•		61
Object Programs Usi						Die	k Fi		•	•	62
Object Programs Usi	•								-	•	52
Indicators	-							d	•		60
						·	•	•	•	·	62
Processing Large Inde						•	•	•	•	•	63
Multivolume Files					•	•	·	•	•	•	63
OCL Considerations	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	64

File Statement Parameter C									
Disk Files		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	65
Multivolume Tape Files			•	•	•	•	•	•	69
File Statement Parameter C	Consid	lerati	ons	for	Μι	ultiv	olu	ime	
Tape Files			•	•	•	·			70
Split Cylinder Files		•				•	•	•	71
Restrictions for Using S	plit C	ylind	ler i	File	s		•		71
Creating the First Split	Cylin	der F	ile	in a	Gr	oup	,		71
Creating Other Split Cy	linder	File	s						72
Accessing Existing Split	Cylin	nder	File	s					. 72
Loading to Existing Spl	it Cyl	inde	Fi	les					. 72
Scratch Split Cylinder F	iles								. 72
Automatic Disk File Alloca	ition								73
Compiling a Source Program	n anc	l Stoi	ring	it i	n ar	וס ה	ojec	t	
Library									73
Sample Statements .									. 74
Loading Programs in a DPF									. 74
OCL Considerations For Lo									
Environment		•							. 74
DPF Considerations for									. 77
Sample Job Streams									. 77
Restarting a Checkpointed	Progr	am							. 79
Programming Considera									. 79
Restart Procedure .									. 79
OCL Considerations for Us									. 79
Statement Examples .									. 80
Example									. 80
	•••	•	•	•	•	-	-		
PART II. SYSTEM UTILI	ТҮ Р	ROG	RA	MS					. 83
INTRODUCTION TO SYS	тем	υτιι		Y PI	RO	GR		S.	85
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St	TEM atem	UTI I ents		y Pi	RO	GR		S.	
INTRODUCTION TO SYS	TEM atem	UTI I ents		y Pi	RO	GR		S.	
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital	TEM atem Lette	UTII ents ers, N	um	Y PI · bers	RO • •	GR · ·	ipeo	S	85 86
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements .	TEM atem Lette	UTII ents ers, N	um	Y PI · bers	RO • •	GR · ·	ipeo	S	85 86
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters	TEM atem Lette 	UTII ents rs, N	um	Y PI · · bers	RO , ar	GR nd S	ipeo	S	85 86
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P	TEM atem Lette ROG	UTIL ents rs, N RAM	uml I—\$	Y PI • • • • TIN	RO	GR		S	85 86 87
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations .	TEM atem Lette ROG	UTIL ents rs, N RAN	uml I—\$	Y PI • • • • TIN	RO	GR		S	85 86 87 89
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa	TEM atemo Lette ROG tion	UTIL ents rs, N RAN	uml I—\$	Y Pl • • bers • TIN	RO	GR		S	85 86 87 89
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations .	TEM atemo Lette ROG tion	UTIL ents rs, N RAN	uml I—\$	Y Pl • • bers • TIN	RO . ar IIT	GR		S	85 86 87 89 91 91
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label	TEM atem Lette ROG tion	UTIL ents rs, N RAN	uml I—\$	Y PI	RO • • • • • •	GR		S	85 86 87 87 89 91 91
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa	TEM atem Lette ROG tion	UTIL ents rs, N RAN	uml I—\$	Y PI	RO • • • • • •	GR		S	85 86 87 87 89 91 91
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format .	TEM atem Lette ROG tion PRC	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	umi !—\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY	TEM atem Lette ROG tion PRC	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	umi !—\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 95
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format . OCL Considerations	TEM atem Lette ROG tion PRC	UTIL ents rs, N RAM	um —\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 95
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format .	TEM atem Lette ROG tion PRC	UTIL ents rs, N RAM	um —\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 95
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations	TEM atem Lette ROG tion PRC	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	um —\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	85 86 87 89 91 91 91 92 95 95 96
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations	TEM atemu . Lette tion 	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	um —\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	85 86 87 89 91 91 91 92 95 95 95 96
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions .	TEM atemu Lette	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	um —\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO . ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 95 95 96 97 100
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN)	TEM atem Lette	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	um —\$	Y P bers TIN -\$T	RO ; ar ; ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 95 96 97 100 100
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN)	TEM atem Lette tion PRC 	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	umi I—\$	Y PI · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S . 	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 100
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN)	TEM atem Lette tion PRC 	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	umi I—\$	Y PI · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 100 101
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN)	TEM atem Lette tion PRC	UTIL ents rs, N RAM OGRA	umi I—\$	Y PI · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control St Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) CAP Parameter (UIN)	TEM atem Lette ROG tion PRC PRC NN NN NN NN	UTIL ents RAN OGRA	um I-\$	Y PI 	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101 101
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format . OCL Considerations . DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) CAP Parameter (UIN) PACK Parameter (VOL)	TEM atem Lette tion PRC 	UTIL ents RAN DGRA RAM	um I-\$	Y PI 	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S .	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101 101 102
INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format OCL Considerations DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) CAP Parameter (UIN) PACK Parameter (VOL) ID (Identification) Para	TEM atem Lette tion PRC N)	UTIL ents RAN OGRA	um I-\$	Y PI 	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S .	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101 101 102 102
 INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format . OCL Considerations . DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) UNIT Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) PACK Parameter (VOL) ID (Identification) Para NAME 360 Parameter (OCL Considerations 	TEM atem Lette tion PRC N)	UTIL ents RAN OGRA	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Y PI 	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S .	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101 101 101 102 102 102 102 102
 INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format . OCL Considerations . TYPE Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) VARIFY Parameter (UIN) PACK Parameter (VOL) ID (Identification) Parameter (OCL Consideration) 	TEM atem(Lette tion PRC 	UTIL ents rrs, N RAM GRA C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Y PI 	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S cial 	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101 101 101 102 102 102 102 102 102 102
 INTRODUCTION TO SYS To Write Utility Control Statements . Special Meaning of Capital Characters . TAPE INITIALIZATION P OCL Considerations . Messages for Tape Initializa Printout of Volume Label TAPE ERROR SUMMARY Error Logging Format . OCL Considerations . DISK INITIALIZATION P Parameter Descriptions . TYPE Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) VERIFY Parameter (UIN) PACK Parameter (VOL) ID (Identification) Para NAME 360 Parameter (OCL Considerations . 	TEM atem(Lette Tion PRC 	UTIL ents rrs, N RAM OGRA	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Y PI	RO , ar , ar	GR • • • • • • • •		S cial 	 85 86 87 89 91 91 92 95 96 97 100 100 101 101 101 102 102 102 102 102 102 102 102

ALTERNATE TRACK												
-\$ALT			•			•						105
Parameter Descriptions												107
PACK Parameter							÷					107
UNIT Parameter .												107
VERIFY Parameter		•	•							•		107
ASSIGN Parameter			•		•				•			108
UNASSIGN Parame	ter		•			•	•					108
OCL Considerations									•			109
Examples			•		•						•	109
Examples Conditional Assignment	nent	:	•		•			•				109
Messages for Alternate	Trac	k A	ssi	gnn	nen	t	•					110
ALTERNATE TRACK \$BUILD												111
Parameter and Substitu								:	•	•		112
									•	•		
PACK Parameter	·	•	•	•							·	112
UNIT Parameter . TRACK Parameter	•	·	•		•		·	·		·		112
				•	·	·	•	·	·	·		
LENGTH Parameter				•	·	·		•	·			
DISP (Displacement								·			•	113
Substitute Data . OCL Considerations	·	•	•	•	•		•	•		·		
							•					113 113
Examples								•				113
Correcting Character	rs o	n ar	A	iter	nat	e 11	race	C C	•	•	·	113
FILE AND VOLUME			n	I S P	۱ A '	V P	BU	GB	ΔМ			
-\$LABEL												115
Parameter Descriptions UNIT Parameter .	·	•			·	•						116 116
LABEL Parameter	·		•	·	·	·	·	·	·	·		
			•	·		·	·	·				116
OCL Considerations												119
Examples								•	·	·	٠	120 120
Printing VTOC Info	rma	itioi	n to	or I	wo	FII	es	·	·	·	·	120
FILE DELETE PROGE		1_¢	ne	IE	т							121
Parameter Descriptions												
PACK Parameter	•	•		:					·			123
PACK Parameter UNIT Parameter .	•	•			•	•			·	·		123
LABEL Parameter	•	•			·	·	•		•			
						·		·	·	•		123
DATE Parameter DATA Parameter (F	• •	•	· ^-	•	•	·	•	·	•	•		124
OCL Considerations	tem	ove	Ur	пу)	•	·	·	•				
OCL Considerations	•	·	•									
Examples Deleting One of Sev												125 125
Deleting One of Sev	erai	F 10	es r	Tav	ing	the	Sal	ne	Nan	ie	·	125
DISK COPY/DUMP PR	nei	RA	n	\$C() DPN	,						127
Parameter Descriptions	00		•••	ΨΟ.		•	:				:	131
FROM and TO Para									:	•	•	131
OUTPUT Parameter										:	·	
DELETE Parameter										:	:	131
REORG (Re-organiz												
WORK Parameter (C										:	•	
SELECT KEY and S									·	•	•	133
(SELECT)	•	•	•	•	·	•	·	•	•	•	·	133
SELECT RECORD	Parr	m	tor	. 10	E I I	ECT	r١					1 24
										·	·	
Copying Multivolume F										·	·	134
Maintaining Proper										•	•	134
Maintaining Correct										•	·	134
Direct File Attribut									•	•	·	134
Copying Multivolum									•	•	•	134
OCL Considerations					•	·		·	•	•	•	135
Examples	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	137

	DUMP/RESTORE PROGRAM - \$DCOPY			139
	Parameter Descriptions			140
	From and To Parameters (COPY PACK)			140
	PACK Parameter (COPY PACK)			141
I				141
	File Statement When Copying from Disk to Tape		•	
	(Dump)			141
	File Statement When Copying from Tape to Disk		•	
	(Restore)			141
	Examples			
I		•	•	144
	LIBRARY MAINTENANCE PROGRAM-\$MAINT			
	Library Description		•	
				147
			•	148
			•	149
			•	150
			•	151
	TO Parameter			152
	SOURCE and OBJECT Parameters			152
	DIRSIZE Parameter			152
				152
				153
				154
				157
				164
		• •	•	169
	Modify Function			171
	Rename Function			
	OCL Considerations			175
	Examples			175
	IBM SYSTEM/3 5445 DATA INTERCHANGE			
	UTILITY PROGRAM-\$VTOC	• •	•	183
	•	• •		185
		•		185
				185
	OCL Considerations	•		185
	APPENDIX A. IBM SYSTEM/3 STANDARD			
	CHARACTER SET			187
	APPENDIX B. CONVERSION			189
	Records To Tracks Conversion			189
	Determining the Number of Sequential or Direct	t		
	File Tracks			189
	Determining the Number of Indexed File Tracks			189
	Cylinder/Track to Track Number Conversion .			190
				190
	Track Number to Cylinder/Track Conversion .	•	• •	190
	ADDENIDIN O EVETEM/200 EVETEM/270 DIEK	E 11	E	
	APPENDIX C. SYSTEM/360-SYSTEM/370 DISK	r1L	C	104
	COMPATIBILITY	•	• •	191
	System/3 to System/360-System/370			191
	System/360-System/370 to System/3	•	• •	191
	INDEX	•		193



This publication contains two parts. Part I describes operation control language (OCL) statements. Part II describes system utility programs.

Part I

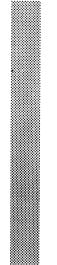
Refer to Part I if you want to know:

- 1. What an OCL statement is.
- 2. What each OCL statement is used for (function).
- 3. Where each OCL statement is placed in relation to others and when it is needed (placement).
- 4. How each statement must be coded (format).
- 5. What each statement must contain (contents).

Part II

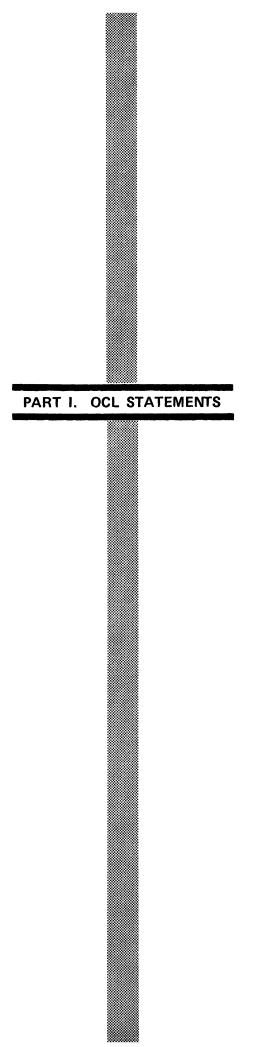
Refer to Part II if you want to know:

- 1. What system utility programs are supplied with the system.
- 2. The function of each utility program.
- 3. The operation control language (OCL) statements and utility control statements necessary to request each utility program.



.

iv ·



WHAT IS OCL?

Operation control language (OCL) is your means of communicating with the IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System. You must write a set of OCL statements for each program you want to run. Based on the information supplied by the OCL statements, the Disk System will load and execute your Disk System programs or perform system utility functions.

You can supply OCL statements in two ways: (1) punch the statements into cards, which are then read by the Disk System; (2) use the printer-keyboard to key the statements directly to the Disk System.

After the Disk System reads a set of OCL statements for a program, it runs the program. When the program ends, the Disk System reads the set of statements for the next program, then runs that program. This procedure is repeated until all OCL statements have been read and the corresponding programs have been run.

The running of your programs is controlled by system control programs. System control programs must be in core storage before your jobs can be run. These programs are located on disk and are brought into storage by a procedure called initial program load (IPL). IPL is performed by the operator when the system is turned on. For more information on IPL, see the *IBM System/3 Disk System Operator's Guide*, GC21-7508.

The DATE statement is part of the IPL process and must be the first statement provided for your program. (See DATE Statement in Statement Descriptions for more information.)

OCL and the Job Stream

The OCL statements you supply form the basis of the *job stream*. If your program requires the use of data from the system input device (the device used to read OCL statements) your program and that data must follow the corresponding OCL. The job stream, therefore, can contain programs and program data as well as OCL statements. Figure 1 is an example of a card input job stream.

You can also store sets of OCL statements for your programs outside of the job stream in a source library on disk. These sets are called *procedures*. You can instruct the system to merge procedures into the job stream. The ability to store sets of frequently used OCL statements on disk makes it possible to avoid recoding the statements every time they are used. (See *Procedures* under *Statement Descriptions* for more information.)

ORGANIZATION OF PART I

Part I is divided into:

- 1. Coding Rules defines the general contents of the OCL statements and explains the rules for writing the statements.
- 2. Statement Descriptions explains the functions, format, and contents of each OCL statement, and the places in the job stream the statement may be used.
- 3. Statement Examples presents and explains a job stream containing most of the OCL statements.

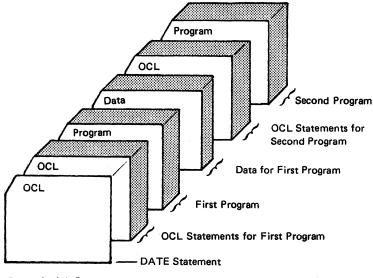


Figure 1. Job Stream

TYPES OF INFORMATION

Operation control language (OCL) statements contain, at most, two types of information: a *statement identifier* and *parameters*. A statement identifier is information that tells one statement from another. A parameter is additional information supplied with the statement identifier. Figure 2 shows the general form of OCL statements.

Identifier Parameter 1, Parameter 2, ..., Parameter n

Figure 2. General Form of OCL Statements

Statement Identifiers

Every OCL statement needs a statement identifier. The identifiers are as follows:

DATE	IMAGE	NOHALT	FILE
LOAD	FORMS	HALT	BSCA
RUN	LOG	* (asterisk)	CALL
SWITCH	READER	PAUSE	PARTITION
COMPILE	PUNCH	/&	LOCKOUT

LOAD is an example of a statement identifier.

1			A	~	~	~	Å				12				16			20			24			28				32	_
	1		Ľ	Ø	A	D	8	ρ	R	0	G	1		F	1	Γ							Γ						F
Γ	Γ		8	P	~	×	7	Γ	Γ			Γ	ľ	Ĺ		Γ	Γ	ſ	Γ	Γ		Γ			Γ	Γ	Γ	Π	T
Г	T	Π		Г		Γ		Г				Г				Γ		Γ				Γ	Γ					Π	F

Parameters

.

.

Some statements need parameters. Others do not. (See *Statement Descriptions* for an explanation of the statements which need parameters.) Parameters can be either *codes* or *data*. A code is a word or group of characters that has a certain meaning. Data is information such as the names, locations, and lengths of files on disk. (See *Statement Descriptions* for data and code restrictions on parameters.) In the following example, PROG2 is the name of an RPG II object program, and F1 is a code that stands for the fixed disk on drive one. PROG2 is a data parameter and F1 is a code parameter.

1	4	ļ.		8	3			12				16		:	20			24	_	28				32	
//	L	.0	A	D	P	R	0	G	2	5	F	1									Γ				Г
Π	Τ	Т	Π	Τ	Τ	Τ	Γ														Γ		Γ		Γ
T		T	П	T	T	T	Γ								Π		Π				Γ	Γ			Γ

Some statements require certain words in parameters to tell one parameter from another. The words are called *keywords*. Parameters containing keywords are called *keyword parameters*. In Figure 3, NAME-MASTER, PACK-VOL1, and UNIT-R1 are keyword parameters. NAME, PACK, and UNIT are keywords. MASTER and VOL1 are data parameters. R1 is a code parameter. There should always be a hyphen between the keyword and the code or data parameter.

1			4						8		ŝ	*	8	3	Ż	~	8)	6			8	ÿ	Ö		8	8	24	8	ð	8		8		8		3	i.		8		4	8	2			4	10		
/	1	1	F	Ī		Ĺ	F			h	Ń	Ą	M	E	-	-	Ν	V	V	5	T	E		R	F	1		Ĉ	K	-	N	h	2		1		1	1	×	1	T		1	Å.	1		Ī	T			T
		T		Ī		-	Ī	ľ	Ċ		Ī			Ī				Ī				T	Ī		T	T	1	Ĩ			Ī	T	1			1	ľ	T				T	а.			Ī	T	1			T
		T		T			Γ	T			T			Ι				I				Ι	T		Γ	Τ					Γ	T	I				Τ	T					T			Γ	T	Ţ			Ι
1	Γ	Т	1	Г	٦		Г	T		Г	T		1	T	٦			Т	Ţ		Г	Т	Т		 Г	Т	T				Г	Т	T			Γ	Т	Т	1			Т	Т			Г	Т	Т	1	Γ	Т

Figure 3. Keyword Parameters

GENERAL CODING RULES

In Part 1 of this book, the numbers that appear above statement formats and examples indicate the card columns or line positions occupied by the statements. In statement formats, special characters, such as //, and words written in capital letters are information that must be used exactly as shown. Words written in small letters, such as code, program-name, and unit, represent information that you must supply.

Statements Beginning with //

The rules for coding the statements are as follows (the term position refers to either card column or line position):

- Place the // in positions 1 and 2.
- Leave one or more blanks between the // and the word that forms the statement identifier (LOAD, RUN, CALL, etc.).
- Leave one or more blanks between the end of the statement identifier and the first parameter.
- If you need more than one parameter, use a comma to separate them. No blanks are allowed within or between parameters. (For the exception to this rule, see the description for the HIKEY parameter under *Multivolume Files*.) Anything following the first blank is considered a comment (see *Comments*).
- If you are writing keyword parameters, place the keyword first and use a hyphen to separate the keyword from the code or data parameter.
- If the parameter is not a keyword parameter, write the parameters in the order in which they are discussed in this manual.

Figure 4 illustrates the coding rules. The statement identifiers are LOAD and FILE. The parameters are PROG1, R1, NAME-MASTER, UNIT-R1, and PACK-VOL1. The last three parameters are keyword parameters.

1	4				8				12			1	6				20				24				28				32				36				40				44	4
11	L	C	A	D		P	R	0	G	1	,	R	1					[_																			L	
	+	+	+	-	F	1	L	E	-		-		M	A	М	E	-	M	A	S	т	F	R		U	N	1	π	-	R	1		P	A	C	K	-	V	0	L	1	
		T	T	Ī		Γ		T	Γ															,	Γ	Γ					Ι	1							Γ		T	1
		Т	Г	Г			1	Г	Г				٦											1	Γ	Г	1	Γ	Γ	Г	Г	Г	Г		Γ	Г		Г	Г	Γ	Ţ	Ĩ

Figure 4. Illustration of General Coding Rules

Statements Beginning with Other Than //

* and /& statements do not require // preceding them when coded. (See *Statement Descriptions* for * and /& statements.)

Continuation

.

All OCL statements except FILE must not exceed 96 characters, including blanks and comments. Because of the large number of parameters possible in a FILE statement, you can use two or more cards or lines for those statements. Each card or line you use must not exceed 96 characters. (Data for the IMAGE statement requires continuation for the cards or lines containing the chain image characters, but the data follows different continuation rules. See *IMAGE Statement* under *Statement Descriptions* for more information.)

The continuation rules are as follows:

- Place a comma after the last parameter in every card or line except the last. The comma, followed by a blank, tells the system that the statement is continued in the next card or line.
- Begin each new card or line with a // in positions 1 and 2.
- Leave one or more blanks between the // and the first parameter in the card or line. (See *HIKEY Parameter* under *Multivolume Files* for exception to this rule.)

Figure 5 illustrates the continuation rules.

1				4			1	8				12				16				20				24				28				32			
/	2	1			F	1	1	2	E						Γ		N	4	M	E	-	M	A	5	7	E	R								Γ
1		1								L	A	B	E	L	•	8	1	L	L	1	N	G	,	Ø	A	T	E	-	Ø	7	2	9	6	9	L
1	V	'				U	1	V	1	T	-	R	1	,	P	A	C	K	-	V	þ	L	1												ľ
														ľ										Γ											Γ
			T				Т								Γ		Г	Γ	Γ		Γ			Γ		Γ		Γ	Г						Γ

Figure 5. Illustration of Continuation Rules

Comments

You can include comments in the following places in your statements:

- Following the // in statements beginning with //. Begin the comment in position 3, immediately following the //. You can use up to eight characters without blanks. Leave one or more blanks between the comment and the word forming the statement identifier. Figure 6 contains such a comment. The word BILLING is the comment.
- After the last parameter. Leave one or more blanks between the last parameter and your comment. The comment can be any combination of characters. If the statement is continued in subsequent cards or lines, you can place comments after the last parameter in any of the cards or lines.
- After statements without parameters. Leave one or more blanks between the statement identifier and your comment. Examples of statements without parameters are: /&, // PAUSE, and // RUN.

In addition to writing comments within your OCL statements, you can include whole cards or lines of comments. The OCL comment statement is provided for that purpose. (See * (Comment) Statements under Statement Descriptions for more information.)

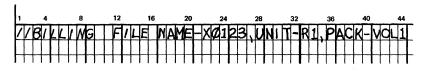


Figure 6. Comment Following //

STATEMENT DESCRIPTIONS

Each OCL statement is described separately in this section. The following information is given for each statement:

- 1. The function of the statement.
- 2. The placement of the statement in regard to other statements and the circumstances under which the statement is needed.
- 3. The format of the statement.
- 4. The contents of the statement, explaining the parameters that can be used in the statement.

Figure 7 gives the function, placement, and restrictions on use for each OCL statement.

Figure 8 describes the contents of the OCL statements. It is meant for reference only. If you are not familiar with an entry, or you do not know when to use or omit it, refer to the proper statement in the remainder of this section.

When using Figure 8, remember that words written in small letters such as filename or value require a choice on your part, depending on the functions you want the statement to perform. Refer to Figure 8 to see which parameters are available. Those parameters that are capitalized must be coded along with the data or code parameter.

			EMENT	
STATEMENT	FUNCTION	STATEMENT APPEARS	STATEMENT APPEARS	RESTRICTIONS ON USE
// DATE	Supplies the system with a date, this date is given to disk files being created.	Must follow LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement except at IPL time, when it must precede the first LOAD or CALL statement.	Must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Must be supplied during the Initial Program Load. The effect of the statement is for that job only.
// LOAD *	Indicates that the object program will be loaded from the system input device following the RUN statement.	Must precede the RUN statement	Must be the first // statement.	LOAD * cannot be used in program level 2.
// LOAD	Identifies the program to be run and in- dicates the disk that contains the object library from which it is to be loaded.	Must precede the RUN statement.	Must be the first // statement.	
// RUN	Indicates the end of the OCL statements for a program and tells system to run the program.	Must be the last OCL statement.	May be the last statement.	Required in the job stream for each program which is to be run.
// SWITCH	Used to set one or more external indicators on or off or leave the in- dicator as it is.	Must follow LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.	Must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	
// COMPILE	Tells the system where the source program to be compiled is located and where to place the object program.	Must follow LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.	Must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	
// IMAGE	Tells the system to re- place the chain-image area with characters indicated in the fol- lowing data cards or characters keyed in or read from source library.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Required if the printer chain has been changed.
// Forms	Instructs the system to change the number of lines printed per page.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	
// LOG	Instructs system to start or stop printing OCL statements and codes and indicates the device to be used to print them.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Device cannot be specified in program level 2.
// READER	Changes the system input device used to read OCL statements.	Must precede LOAD or CALL statement or follow the RUN statement and precede the next LOAD or CALL statement	Must precede the LOAD statement (if LOAD is used).	In a procedure, the input device is not changed until the procedure is completely executed.

Figure 7 (Part 1 of 2)	. Table of OCL Statements
------------------------	---------------------------

		PLACI	EMENT	
STATEMENT	FUNCTION	STATEMENT APPEARS	STATEMENT APPEARS	RESTRICTIONS ON USE
// PUNCH	Enables you to change the system punch device.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement.	
// NOHALT	Instructs system to continue without stopping when a program ends.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Ignored in program level 2.
// HALT	Instructs system to halt when program ends; cancels the effect of the NOHALT statement.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Ignored in program level 2.
*(Comment)	Used to explain the job or give the operator instructions; does not affect the program in operation.	Anywhere.	Anywhere.	
// PAUSE	Tells the program to stop in order to give the operator time to per- form a function. Operator must restart program.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	
/&	Provides OCL security from previous job.	Recommended as the first statement of a job.	Not allowed in a procedure.	Can be used in the job stream only.
// FILE	Supplies information about the file to the system.	Must follow LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.	Must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Required for every new file created and existing files being used.
// BSCA	Changes the BSCA line number.	Must follow LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN state- ment.	Must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	
// CALL	Identifies procedure to be merged into job stream and the disk containing the source library from which to read the procedure.	Must precede the RUN statement.	Indicates chained procedures.	Can be no more than nine levels of nested chained procedures.
// PARTITION	Guarantees a minimum size to level 2 for a program in that level.	Anywhere, among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Cannot be submitted in program level 2 or when program level 2 is processing.
// LOCKOUT	Disables the other pro- gram level to allow fast job initiation in the program level in which the LOCKOUT card was read.	Anywhere among the OCL statements.	Must precede the RUN statement (if RUN is used).	Ignored on a non-DPF system.

Figure 7 (Part 2 of 2). Table of OCL Statements

STATEMENT	PARAMETER	CODE	MEANING OF CODE
// DATE	date	mmddyy or ddmmyy	System date or date within a set of statements
// LOAD	asterisk	*	Program is to be loaded from the system input device
	program name	name	Name of program that is to be loaded from disk
	unit	R1 R2 F1 F2	Object library resides upon: Removable disk on drive one Removable disk on drive two Fixed disk on drive one Fixed disk on drive two
// RUN	none		
// ЅѠӏТСН	indicator-settings	Refer to SWITCH Statement under Statement Descriptions	
// COMPILE	SOURCE	SOURCE-name	Name of source program
	UNIT	UNIT-R1 R2 F1 F2	Where disk that contains the source library is located (the meanings of the unit codes are the same as for LOAD)
	OBJECT	OBJECT-R1 R2 F1 F2	Where to place the object program (the meanings of the unit codes are the same as for LOAD)
// IMAGE	format	нех	To indicate characters from cards are in hexadecimal form
		CHAR MEM	To indicate characters from cards are in EBCDIC form To indicate characters are from the source library
	number	value	Number of new characters
	name	name	Identifies the characters in the library
	unit	R1 R2 F1 F2	Where the disk that contains the library is located (the meanings of the unit codes are the same as for LOAD)
// FORMS	DEVICE	DEVICE-name	Indicates which printer is used
	LINES	LINES-value	Indicates number of lines to be printed per page
// LOG	code	CONSOLE PRINTER OFF ON	Use printer-keyboard as logging device Use printer as logging device Stop printing Start printing
// READER	system input device	CONSOLE MFCU2 MFCU1 1442	Printer-keyboard Secondary hopper of MFCU Primary hopper of MFCU Card Read/Punch
// PUNCH	system punch device	MFCU2 MFCU1 1442	Secondary hopper of MFCU Primary hopper of MFCU Card Read/Punch

Figure 8 (Part 1 of 4). Table of Parameters

STATEMENT	PARAMETER	CODE	MEANING OF CODE
// NOHALT	none		
// HALT	none		
* (Comment)	none		
// PAUSE	none		
/&	none		
// FILE	NAME	NAME-filename	Name the program uses to refer to the file
(Disk Files)	UNIT	UNIT-R1 R2 F1 F2	Where the 5444 disk that contains or will contain the file is located (the meanings of the unit codes are the same as for LOAD)
		D1 D2	Where the 5445 disk that contains or will contain the file is located.
	РАСК	PACK-name	Name of disk that contains or will contain the file
	LABEL	LABEL-filename	Name by which your file is identified on disk
	RECORDS or TRACKS	RECORDS-number of TRACKS-number	Amount of space needed on a disk for a file
	LOCATION	LOCATION-track number	Number of track on which file begins or is to begin (5444 disk only)
		LOCATION-cylinder number	Cylinder number on which file begins or is to begin. Track assumed zero (5445 disk only).
		LOCATION-cylinder number/track number	Cylinder number, track number on which file begins or is to begin (5445 disk only).
		LOCATION-filename	Filename of a split cylinder file that is the first split cylinder file in a group, or is an already existing split cylinder file. (5445 disk only). For further discus- sion see <i>Split Cylinder Files</i> .
	RETAIN	RETAIN-T S P A	Temporary file Scratch file Permanent file Reactivate scratch file
	DATE	DATE-mmddyy ddmmyy	Tells the system the date the file was created
	НІКЕҮ	HIKEY-'highest key fields allowed'	List of highest key fields allowed on each pack
	SPLIT	SPLIT-tracks/cylinders or	The number of tracks per cylinder needed for the split cylinder file; the number of cylinders needed
		SPLIT-tracks	for a group of split cylinder files (5445 disk only). For further discussion see <i>Split Cylinder Files.</i>

Figure 8 (Part 2 of 4). Table of Parameters

.

STATEMENT	PARAMETER	CODE	MEANING OF CODE
// FILE	NAME	NAME-filename	Name the program uses to refer to the file.
(Tape File)	UNIT	UNIT-T1 T2 T3 T4	Where the tape that contains or will contain the file is mounted.
	REEL	REEL-name	Name of the tape that contains or will contain the file.
		-NL	The tape is not labeled.
		-NS	The tape contains non-standard labels.
	LABEL	LABEL-filename or LABEL-'character string'	Name by which your file is identified on tape.
	DATE	DATE-mmddyy ddmmyy	Tells the system the date the file was created.
	RETAIN	RETAIN-nnn	The number of days a file should be retained before it expires.
	BLKL	BLKL-block length	The number of bytes in a physical block of tape.
	RECL	RECL-record length	The number of bytes in a logical record.
	RECFM	RECFM-F	Fixed length, unblocked records.
		-V	Variable length, unblocked records.
		-D	Variable length, unblocked, D-type ASCII records.
		-FB	Fixed length, blocked records.
		-VB	Variable length, blocked records.
		-DB	Variable length, blocked, D-type ASCII records.
	END	END-LEAVE	The tape remains in its present position after the file is processed.
		-UNLOAD	The tape is rewound and unloaded after processing.
		-REWIND	The tape is rewound after processing.
	DENSITY	DENSITY-200	The tape will be written at 200 bpi (bits per inch) density.
		-556	The tape will be written at 556 bpi density.
		-800	The tape will be written at 800 bpi density.
		-1600	The tape will be written at 1600 bpi density.

Figure 8 (Part 3 of 4). Table of Parameters

STATEMENT	PARAMETER	CODE	MEANING OF CODE
	ASCII	ASCII-YES	An ASCII file is being processed.
		-NO	An EBCDIC file is being processed.
	DEFER	DEFER-YES	The tape volume will be mounted later.
		-NO	The tape is presently mounted.
	CONVERT	CONVERT-ON	Data read from or written to a seven track tape file will be converted.
		-OFF	Data read from or written to a seven track tape file will not be converted.
	TRANSLATE	TRANSLATE-ON	Data read from or written to a seven track tape file will be translated.
		-OFF	Data read from or written to a seven track tape file will not be translated.
	PARITY	PARITY-EVEN	The seven track tape file will be read or written in even parity.
i		-ODD	The seven track tape file will be read or written in odd parity.
// BSCA	LINE	LINE-1 2	Change all BSCA DTF line codes to the line number specified.
// CALL	procedure name	name	Name that identifies the procedure in the source library
	unit	R1 R2 F1 F2	Where the disk containing the procedure is located (the meanings of the unit codes are the same as for LOAD)
// PARTITION	size	value	Minimum size of program level 2 in decimal bytes
// LOCKOUT	none		

Figure 8 (Part 4 of 4). Table of Parameters

DATE STATEMENT

Function	The DATE statement gives the Disk System a date, called the <i>system date</i> . The system date is referred to by RPG II field names UDATE, UMONTH, UDAY, and UYEAR. The preceding field names can also be used when referring to the date given to the disk files when they were created.
	A DATE statement within the set of statements for a program changes the system date, but only for that program. When the program ends, the date supplied in the DATE statement at IPL time is again used. There can only be one DATE statement per job.
Placement	A DATE statement is always required during Initial Program Load (IPL). It is the only OCL statement required by the system at that time.
	A DATE statement can also appear within any of the sets of statements for your programs. The DATE statement must follow the LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.
Format	// DATE date
Contents	The system date can be in either of two forms: month-day-year (mmddyy) or day-month-year (ddmmyy). You must specify the form at System Generation time. (See <i>IBM System/3 Disk System Operator's Guide</i> , GC2I-7508, for more information on System Generation.) The date you specify must be in that form.
Example	The date can be written with or without punctuation. For example, July 25, I970, could be specified in any one of the following ways: 07-25-70 25-07-70 072570 250770
	Month, day, and year must each be 2-digit numbers but lead zeros in month and day may be omitted when punctuation is used (7-25-70 or 25-7-70). In the punctuated form, any characters except commas, quotes, numbers and blanks can be used as punctuation.

can be used as punctuation.

16

Function	The LOAD statement identifies the program to be run and indicates whether the program will be loaded from the system input device or disk.
Placement	One LOAD statement is required within each of the sets of statements for your programs. If the set of statements appears on the job stream, the only requirement for the LOAD statement is that it must precede the RUN statement. In procedures, the LOAD statement must precede the RUN statement. (For more information about procedures, see <i>Procedures</i> in this section)
Format	The LOAD statement has two formats. The first format is used for object pro- grams loaded from the system input device and cannot be used in a procedure. The second format is used for programs loaded from disk.
	// LOAD *
	// LOAD program-name,unit
Contents	Asterisk: An asterisk indicates that the object program will be loaded from the system input device. Program-name and unit parameters must not be included. The cards or lines that contain the program must follow the RUN statement for the program and must be followed by /* or /& to signify the end of the program. LOAD* cannot be used in programming level 2 or in procedures (see Using OCL, Loading Programs in a DPF Environment, for more information on dual programming).
	<i>Program-name:</i> The program-name parameter is the name used on disk to identify the program. Commas, apostrophes, periods, and blanks may not be used in the program name.
	The names you must use for your programs depend on the way the programs were placed on disk. One way includes a compiler option. You can specify that your program be placed on disk immediately after it is compiled. The name you supply to the compiler is the name used to identify the program.
	Another way to place your program on disk is by using the Library Maintenance program. If you used that program, the program-name you supplied in the Library Maintenance control statements is the name used to identify your program. (For more information, see <i>Library Maintenance</i> in Part II of this book.)

Program Name \$ALT Alternate Track Assignment \$BUILD Alternate Track Rebuild Assembler \$ASSEM COBOL \$CBL00 **Data Recording** \$DREC Data Verifying \$DVER \$COPY Disk Copy/Dump **Disk Initialization** \$INIT Disk Sort \$DSORT **Dump Restore \$DCOPY** File and Volume Label Display \$LABEL File Delete **\$DELET** FORTRAN \$FORT Library Maintenance \$MAINT \$CLIST List Macro Processor \$MPXDV MFCU Sort/Collate \$CSORT Overlay Linkage Editor \$OLINK **Reproduce and Interpret** \$REPRO **Remote Job Entry** \$\$RJE Restart \$\$RSTR **RPG II Auto-Report** \$AUTO **RPG II** Compiler \$RPG **Tape Initialization \$TINIT**

The Disk System programs are identified by the following names:

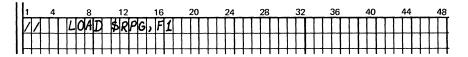
Tape Sort	\$TSORT
Tape Error Summary Program	\$TVES
5445 Data Interchange	\$VTOC
1255 Utility	\$MICR
1270/1255 Utility*	\$MOCR
80-96 Conversion	\$CNVRT
*Not valid within the United States.	

Unit: The unit parameter is a code. It indicates where the disk that contains the program is located. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

The unit parameter is required because your programs can be on any of the disks on your disk unit. The disk area containing your object program is called an object library. You can create an object library on any of the disks on your disk unit by using the Library Maintenance program. (See *Library Maintenance* in Part II of this manual.)

In the following sample LOAD statement, \$RPG is the name that identifies the RPG II Compiler.



F1 is the code indicating the fixed disk on drive one, where the compiler would be located in this case.

Example

RUN STATEMENT

Function	The RUN statement indicates the end of the OCL statements for a program. After the system reads the RUN statement, it runs the program.
Placement	A RUN statement is needed for each of the programs you want the system to run. In the job stream, it must be the last statement within each of the sets of OCL statements for your programs. It can also be the last OCL statement in a pro- cedure. (For more information about procedures, see <i>Procedures</i> in this section.)
Format	// RUN
Contents	None. (Comments may be entered starting in column 8.)

Function	The purpose of the SWITCH statement is to set one or more RPG II external indicators on or off. The indicators are always off after the operator uses the IPL procedure to start the system. If a SWITCH statement is used to set an indicator on, the indicator remains on until another SWITCH statement sets it off, or until the operator again uses the IPL procedure to start the system. There can be only one SWITCH statement per job.	
Placement	The SWITCH statement can appear within any of the sets of statements for your programs. The only requirements for the SWITCH statement are that it must follow the LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.	
Format	// SWITCH indicator-settings	
Contents	<i>Indicator-settings:</i> The indicator-settings parameter is a code that consists of eight characters, one for each of the eight external indicators (U1-U8). The first, or leftmost, character gives the setting of indicator U1; the second character gives the setting of u2; and so on.	
	The code must always contain eight characters. following characters must be used:	For each indicator, one of the
	Character	Meaning
	0	Set the indicator off
	1	Set the indicator on
	x	Leave the indicator as it is
Example	The code 1X0110XX would cause the following	results:
	Indicator	Result
	U1	Set on
	U2	Unaffected
	U3	Set off
	U4	Set on
	U5	Set on
	U6	Set off
	U7	Unaffected
	U8	Unaffected

Function	The COMPILE statement tells the system two the gram to be compiled is located if it is coming fro the object program is to be placed. (An object p has been compiled or translated into machine lar	m a disk source library; (2) where program is a source program which
Placement	The COMPILE statement must be within the set to the compilation. The COMPILE statement m statement and precede the RUN statement.	
Format	// COMPILE parameters	
Contents	All the parameters are keyword parameters (key keywords are: SOURCE, UNIT, and OBJECT.	words are in capital letters). The
	<i>SOURCE:</i> The SOURCE parameter tells the sys gram. The keyword SOURCE must be followed gram on disk. The name is the name by which the on disk in the source library. (For more information see <i>CALL Statement</i> in this section.)	by the name of the source pro- he source program is identified
	The only way you can place source programs in Library Maintenance program. The program nar tenance control statements is the name used to i the library. (For more information, see <i>Library</i> manual.)	ne you supply in Library Main- dentify the source program in
	If the SOURCE parameter is not used, the sourc job stream following the RUN statement.	e program is assumed to be in the
	The SOURCE parameter must always be accomp	panied by the UNIT parameter.
	UNIT: The UNIT parameter is used only when	the SOURCE parameter is used.
	The UNIT parameter is a code indicating where library is located. The codes are as follows:	the disk that contains the source
	Code	Meaning
	R1	Removable disk on drive one
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one
	R2	Removable disk on drive two
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two

22

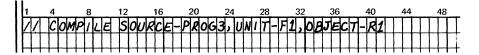
COMPILE STATEMENT (continued)

Example

OBJECT: The OBJECT parameter tells the system where to place the object program. The OBJECT parameter may be specified without using the SOURCE and UNIT parameters. The codes which are used to indicate the disk unit on which the object program is to be placed are R1, F2, R2, or F2.

Note: If the OBJECT parameter is omitted, it is assumed that the object program is to be placed on the same disk as the compiler.

The following sample COMPILE statement tells the system that the source program with the name PROG3 is located on the fixed disk on drive one (F1).



The parameter, OBJECT-R1, tells the system to place the object program on the removable disk on drive one.

IMAGE STATEMENT

Function	To operate correctly, the printer requires characters matching those on the printer chain to be in a special area of core storage called the chain-image area. When you replace the printer chain with one having different characters, you must also change the contents of the chain-image area.
	The IMAGE statement instructs the system to replace the contents of the chain- image area with the characters indicated by the statement. The characters can be entered from the system input device, or contained in a source library on disk. The effect of the IMAGE statement is temporary and the system chain image is returned to the chain-image area when IPL occurs.
Placement	The IMAGE statement can appear anywhere among the OCL statements. In a procedure, it must precede the RUN statement.
Format	// IMAGE parameters
Contents	The IMAGE statement tells the system either of two things: (1) the new chain characters are to be read from the system input device; or (2) the new chain characters are to be read from the source library.
	The IMAGE parameters are:
	– format-HEX, CHAR, or MEM
	– number-value
	– name-name
	– unit-code
	(Coding only HEX, CHAR, or MEM is preferable for format but HEXADECIMAL, CHARACTER, or MEMBER can be coded.)
	Characters From the System Input Device
	If you wish to indicate that the new chain characters are to be read from the system input device, use the following parameters:
	<i>Format:</i> Use the word CHAR to indicate that the characters are in EBCDIC form. Use the word HEX to indicate that the characters are in hexadecimal form.
	Number. The number neversetar must be used with UEX and CHAP. It must be

Number: The number parameter must be used with HEX and CHAR. It must be a value which is equal to the number of columns or line positions in the data cards or the data keyed in following the IMAGE statement that contains the new characters. This number must not exceed 240 when the characters are hexadecimal, 120 when characters are EBCDIC. The name and unit parameters must not be coded.

Following are the rules for punching or keying the new characters:

- 1. The characters must begin in column or line position 1.
- Consecutive card columns or line positions must be used; however, only the first 80 columns or line positions of the card or line can be used. Hexadecimal requires an even number of columns or line positions, two per character.
- 3. To continue the characters on another card or line begin the characters in column or line position 1.

Characters From the Source Library on Disk

To indicate that new chain characters are to be read from the source library on disk, the format parameter must specify the word MEM.

The following parameters must also be included:

Name: The name parameter identifies the source member containing the characters in the library. The only way you can place the characters in a source library is by using the Library Maintenance program. The name you supply in Library Maintenance control statements is the name used to identify the characters in the source library.

Unit: The unit parameter must be used with the name parameter. It is used to tell the system where the disk containing the source library is located on the disk unit. The codes which are used are:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

The IMAGE statement in example A tells the system that the new characters are on data cards or keyed in. The format parameter indicates that new characters are in hexadecimal form; the number parameter indicates that there are 120 columns or line positions containing the new characters.

In example B, the new characters, on data cards or keyed in, are in EBCDIC. The number parameter indicates that there are 48 columns or line positions containing the new characters.

Example C tells the system that the new characters are to be read from the source library on disk. The format parameter indicates that the new chain characters are in the source library. The name parameter indicates that the characters were named CHAIN in the source library. The unit parameter indicates that the source library containing them is on the removable disk on drive one (R1). Examples of the member specified in example C are the data portions of examples A and B. The member itself requires a // IMAGE card with the characters either in hexadecimal or EBCDIC. The number of columns or line positions containing the characters must also be specified.

(See *Library Maintenance* in Part II for restrictions on the name used in coding MEM.)

	1 4 8	12 16	20 24	28 32	36 40	44 48	52 56	60 64
\frown		EX, 120						
(A)	F1F2F3F4F5	F6F7F8F9/ 4DC1C2C3	FØE7E861	LEZE3E4ES	E64FTA6I	TF6BTED	1D2D3D4D	5D6
\mathbf{U}	D7D8D960E9	400102030	C4C5C6C	1C8C94E4E	35D6C5850	7850704	C5E5F7D6	FGE
		* * * * * * * * * *						
	1 4 8	12 16	20 24	28 32	36 40	44 48	52 56	60 64
B	1/ IMAGE C	HAR,48						
\odot	1234567890	#@ISTUVW	XYZ&, %J	KLMNOPQR-	-\$XABCDE	-GH1+.'		
		******		****				.
	1 4 8	12 16	20 24	28 32	36 40	44 48	52 56	60 64
\bigcirc					TITTT			
\bigcirc			41111		++++++	++++++		
		11111111	++++++		++++++++			

Example

Function	The FORMS statement enables you to change the number of lines that the print- er will print per page. The printer automatically assumes the number of lines per page specified at system generation time unless a FORMS statement is used or a user program specifies some other number. This number of lines is effective until another FORMS statement is used or a user program specifies another number.
Placement	The FORMS statement can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements. In a procedure it must precede the RUN statement.
Format	// FORMS parameters
Contents	 All of the parameters are keyword parameters (keywords are in capital letters). The parameters are as follows: DEVICE- 5203 5203L 5203R LINES-value DEVICE: The keyword for this parameter is DEVICE. It must be followed by the name of the printing device. For an IBM 1403 Printer or a single carriage IBM 5203 Printer, either 5203 or 5203L is a valid device name. For a dual carriage IBM 5203 Printer, either 5203 or 5203L specifies the left carriage and 5203R specifies the right carriage. You may omit the DEVICE parameter entirely.
	<i>LINES:</i> The LINES parameter is used to indicate the number of lines per page. The maximum number of lines that can be specified per page is 112. The LINES parameter remains in effect until either an IPL is performed or another FORMS statement for the same device is read. If a line counter specification is used in an RPG II program, it remains in effect only for the duration of the program.
Example	In the following FORMS statement, the system is using the left carriage of the 5203 Printer. The statement tells the system that the forms length is 88 lines per page. $ \frac{1 4 8 12 16 20 24 28 32 36 40 44 48}{1/1 FORMS DEV/CE-5203L, L/MES-88} $

Function	OCL statements and message codes are printed system has no printer-keyboard, the statements printer. The device used to print OCL statements the <i>logging device.</i> If you want to change the <i>l</i> or not the statements and codes are to be print	s and codes are printed on the nts and message codes is called ogging device, or specify whether
	The LOG statement tells the system to do one	of four things:
	 Use the printer as the logging device 	
	 Use the printer-keyboard as the logging d 	evice
	 Stop printing OCL statements and messa 	ge codes
	 Start printing OCL statements and messa 	ge codes
Placement	You can use the LOG statement within any of your programs. In a procedure it must precede	
Format	// LOG code	
Contents	Four codes can be used as parameters. The cod	des are as follows:
	Code	Meaning
	CONSOLE	Use printer-keyboard as logging device
	PRINTER	Use printer as logging device
	OFF	Stop printing
	ON	Start printing
	Only one code can be used in one LOG statemed device is implied when coding CONSOLE or Pl	

When the system reads a LOG statement that contains the OFF code, it stops printing OCL statements and message codes. The only way you can instruct the system to start printing them again is by using a LOG statement that contains the ON, PRINTER, or CONSOLE code. When ON is specified printing resumes on the last logging device specified. However, the system will suspend logging during the time that the log device (excluding the 5471) is allocated to a program in either program level. Logging resumes when the program using the log device goes to end of job.

.

Function	The device used to read OCL statements is called system assumes that the system input device is the You must use a READER statement if you want secondary hopper of the MFCU, or the I442 Card input device.	ne primary hopper of the MFCU. to use the printer-keyboard,
Placement	The READER statement must not come between and a RUN statement. The READER statement or CALL statement or follow the RUN statement CALL statement. If you use the READER state input device is not changed until the procedure is use the READER statement to change the system specify is used to read source programs, control Changing the system input device affects the pla control statements as well as OCL statements. You must place the READER statement in the control	a must precede the initial LOAD at, preceding the next LOAD or ment in a procedure, the system s completely executed. If you n input device, the device you statements, or OCL statements. cement of source programs and
Format	// READER code	
Contents	The codes are:	
	Code	Meaning
	CONSOLE	Printer-keyboard
	MFCU2	Secondary Hopper of the MFCU
	MFCU1	Primary Hopper of the MFCU
	1442	Card Read/Punch

PUNCH STATEMENT		·	
Function	The PUNCH statement enables you to change the system punch device.		
Placement	The PUNCH statement can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements. In a procedure it must precede the RUN statement.		
Format	// PUNCH code		
Contents	Three codes can be use	d as parameters. Tl	ney are:
	Code		Meaning
	MFCU1		Primary Hopper of the MFCU
	MFCU2		Secondary Hopper of the MFCU
	1442		Card Read/Punch

Contents

Function	Normally the system halts when a program ends. The NOHALT statement tells the system to continue by reading the next set of OCL statements without stop- ping, when a program ends. The effect of this statement lasts until the system reads a HALT statement or an IPL occurs. The effect of the NOHALT statement is ignored temporarily when an abnormal job halt occurs. The system reverts to the NOHALT mode after a response.
Placement	A NOHALT statement can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements. In a procedure it must precede the RUN statement. The NOHALT statement is ignored if loaded in program level 2.
Format	// NOHALT
Contents	None (Comments may be entered starting in column 11.)
HALT STATEMENT	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Function	The HALT statement tells the system to halt when a program ends. The operator can restart the system when he is ready, and the system continues reading the next OCL statements.
	The HALT statement is needed only if you want to cancel the effect of a NOHALT statement.
Placement	A HALT statement can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements. In a procedure it must precede the RUN statement. The HALT statement is ignored if loaded in program level 2.
Format	// HALT
Contents	None (Comments may be entered starting in column 9.)
*(COMMENT) STATEMENTS	
Function	Comment statements are commonly used either to explain the jobs or to give the operator instructions. Operator instructions are usually given in connection with a PAUSE statement. Comment statements are printed along with the other OCL statements. They have no other effect on the system.
Placement	You can include, in OCL statements, special statements that contain only com- ments. Comment statements must contain an asterisk (*) in column 1. They can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements in either a job stream or a pro- cedure.
Format	*comment

The comment can be any combination of words and characters. The only requirement is that an asterisk (*) be in column 1.

PAUSE STATEMENT	
Function	The PAUSE statement causes a halt. It usually is used to give the operator time to prepare for the next program. He might, for example, have to place removable disks on the disk units or insert special forms into the printer. Comment state-
	ments that give the operator instructions usually precede PAUSE statements.
	When the operator is ready, he can restart the system. The system continues reading the OCL statements that follow the PAUSE statement.
Placement	PAUSE statements can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements. In a pro- cedure it must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement.
Format	// PAUSE
Contents	None (Comments may be entered starting in column 10.)
/& STATEMENT	
Function	/& statements are used as a precautionary measure. Placed in front of your OČL set, a /& statement signals the system that a new set of OCL statements is coming. It prevents your statements from being read as a part of the preceding set of statements or data. Any attempt to read more data from that device will be block- ed.
Placement	/& statements are not required. It is recommended, however, that you use them as the first statement in each of the sets of OCL statements for your programs. They are not allowed in a procedure.
Format	/&
Contents	None (Comments may be entered starting in column 4.)

/* STATEMENT	
Function	/* statements are not true OCL statements, but are used to indicate the end of a data file read in from a card reader or console.
Placement	A /* statement should be the last card of an input data file or program deck.
Format	/*
Contents	None (Comments may be entered starting in column 4.)

DISK FILE STATEMENT

Function	The FILE statement supplies the system with information about disk files. The system uses this information to read records from and write records on disk.
Placement	You must supply a FILE statement for each of the new disk files that your programs create, and for each of the existing disk files that your programs use. The FILE statement must follow the LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.
Format	// FILE parameters
Contents	All of the parameters are keyword parameters. The parameters are as follows (keywords are in capital letters):
	– NAME-filename (in program)
	– UNIT-code
	– PACK-name
	 LABEL-filename (on disk)
	 RECORDS-number or TRACKS-number
	 LOCATION- track number (5444 disk only) cylinder number cylinder number/track number 5445 only filename
	– RETAIN-code
	– DATE-date
	 HIKEY-highest allowed key fields (on pack)
	SPLIT- SPLIT- SPLIT- tracks/cylinder or tracks 5445 Only
	The NAME, PACK, and UNIT parameters are always required. The others are re- quired only under certain conditions.

NAME: The NAME parameter is always needed. It tells the system the name that your program uses to refer to the file. The NAME parameter must be placed on the first card or line if two or more cards or lines are used for the FILE statement. (See *General Coding Rules* for rules on continuation.)

For some of the programs, you must use specific names for certain files.

DISK FILE STATEMENT (continued)

Program	File	Name
Disk Copy/Dump	Input Output	COPYIN COPYO
Disk Sort	Input Work Output	INPUT WORK (OPTIONAL) OUTPUT
Assembler	Input Work Output	\$SOURCE \$WORK \$WORK 2 (optional)
COBOL Compiler	Input Work Work	\$SOURCE These files \$WORK must be on \$WORKX a 5444
FORTRAN Compiler	Input Work	\$SOURCE disk device. \$WORK
RPG II Compiler	Input Work	\$SOURCE / \$WORK
1255 Utility	Output	F1255
1270 Utility	Output	F7055
RPG II Auto Report	Input Work	\$SOURCE \$WORK
Macro Processor	Output	\$SOURCE
Overlay Linkage Editor	Input Work	\$SOURCE \$WORK
Any program using large indexed files	Work	\$INDEX44 (For 5444 file) or \$INDEX45 (For 5445 file)

34

The keyword for the parameter is NAME. It must be followed by the filename used by the program. The name can be any combination of characters except commas, quotes, or blanks. The first character must be alphabetic. The number of characters must not exceed 8. The following example shows how the NAME parameter for a file named FILEA would be coded.

// FILE MAME-FILEA, PACK-VOLI, UWIT-RI	1	4	8 12	18 20	24 28 32	36 40	44	48
	\mathcal{M}	FI	LE MAME	-FILEA, PA	CK-VOL1,UWI			ПП

UNIT: The UNIT parameter is always needed. It tells the system the disk that contains or will contain the file. The keyword for this parameter is UNIT. It must be followed by a code that indicates the unit. The codes are as follows:

R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

The previous example shows how the UNIT parameter for a file located on the removable disk on 5444 drive one would be coded.

11

PACK: The PACK parameter is always needed for disk files. It tells the system the name of the disk that contains or will contain the file. The system checks this name to ensure that the proper disk is being used. (For information about how a disk is given a name, see *Disk Initialization* in Part II of this manual).

The keyword for this parameter is PACK. It must be followed by the name of the disk. The example under NAME shows how the PACK parameter for a file on a disk named VOL1 would be coded.

LABEL: The LABEL parameter tells the system the name by which your file is identified on disk.

If the file is being created, the name you supply in the LABEL parameter is used to identify the file on disk. If you omit the LABEL parameter from a disk FILE statement, the name from the NAME parameter is used.

If the file is an existing disk file, you must supply a LABEL parameter when the name your program uses to refer to the file differs from the name by which the file is identified on disk.

Several versions of a file can be created on the same disk and be given the same name. If the TRACKS or RECORDS parameter you are using in creating a file is the same as the TRACKS or RECORDS specified for an existing file you must specify LOCATION. You can reference each of these files by its name and date, or by its name and location on disk. Both date and location must be unique for each version. (See Examples 2 and 4 and *File Processing Considerations.*)

The keyword for the parameter is LABEL. It must be followed by the name of the file on disk. The name can be any combination of characters except commas, quotes, or blanks. The first character must be alphabetic. The number of characters must not exceed 8. The LABEL parameter for a file named PAYROLL is coded in the following example.

1		4				8				1	2				1	6				20	0	~	8		2	1	~			26	3	~	**	ं	32		×.	· · · ·	3	6				40)			4	4				48	}			ę	52				Ę	56	3
1	1		F	1	L	E		h	1	1	ς.	E	-	1	j,	-	1	L	ε	Z	4		L	A	E			2	-	P	1	9	Y	R	0	L	L		l	J	N	1	T	-	R	21	! ,	1	7	A	С	ĸ	-	V	1	2	2	1	Γ	Γ	Τ	Ι		Γ
						Γ	Г	T	T	T			Γ	T	T	1				T	Т	7	~	~	1	Ŧ	1			1	ł				~	~	P	ľ	T	T					Γ	T	T	T	T						T	T			Γ	Γ	T	T		Γ
						Γ	Г	T	T	T				T	T	1			Γ	T	T				Γ	T	T			Γ	T	T	1	1			T	T	T	T				T	T	T	T	T	T				Γ	T	T	T				Γ	T	T		Γ

TRACKS or RECORDS: The TRACKS or RECORDS parameter is needed for files that are being created. The parameter tells the system the amount of space needed on disk for the file.

If you use the TRACKS keyword, you specify the number of disk tracks needed for the file.

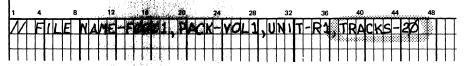
If you use the RECORDS keyword, you specify the approximate number of records for the file. The total space allocated will be rounded up to full tracks allowing adequate space to accomodate at least the number of records indicated.

Either of these two keywords, TRACKS or RECORDS, can appear in the FILE statement, but not both. The keyword must be followed by a number indicating the amount of space needed.

DISK FILE STATEMENT (continued)

If TRACKS is used, the number must be within the range 1-398 if you are using full capacity 5444 disk packs. If you are using half capacity 5444 disk packs, the number must be within the tange 1-198. If you are using 5445 disk packs, the number must be in the range of 1-3980. The following example shows how the TRACKS parameter for a file requiring 20 tracks is coded.

1.1



If RECORDS is used, the number can be up to six digits long. The RECORDS parameter for a file containing 250 records is coded as follows:

l	1		4				8	3				12	i.	i	i Ma	16	hatio			20				24				28	_			32				36	 		40	Series de la como de la Como de la como de			44			ωa	. 4	R .:	<u></u>		5	
l	7	1	F	1	L	E		h	J	4	Z	F	1	F	4	Y.	0.	2		U	N	1	T	-	R	1	Ι.	P	Δ	C	K	-	V	0	1	1	 R	E	C	C	R		2	-	17	厏	1	Ā	T	T	Т	
ſ	Τ	Τ	Γ	Г		T	T	T	T										7								1	ſ	ſ	F	Ī		ľ	Γ				×			0	Ē	t		F	ſ	1	Ŧ	Ť	7	+	
Ī	T	T	T	T	Γ	T	T	t	T	1	٦		-		Π											t	T	t	t	T	T		Γ	ŀ	T			F		t		t	\dagger	t	t	t	\dagger	t	+	+	+	

LOCATION: The LOCATION parameter is not required. It can, however, be used for files that are being created. LOCATION is required when creating several versions of a file or when loading an offline multivolume file to packs which contain other files. (See Example 4.) It can also be used in referencing one of several files housing the same name and same size. LOCATION is not required if sizes differ.

For files that are being created, the parameter tells the system the number of the track on which the file is to begin. If it is omitted, the track is chosen for you.

For files that are being referenced, the parameter tells the system the number of the track on which the file begins. In this case, the system uses the track number to tell one file from another.

The keyword for this parameter is LOCATION. For the 5444 disk the LOCATION format is:

LOCATION-track number

Track number must be between 8 205 (half-capacity disk) or 8 405 (full-capacity disk). Tracks 0-7 are reserved for the system.

For the 5445 disk the LOCATION format is:

LOCATION-cylinder number/track number

Slash is needed to separate cylinder number and track number (when both are specified

Cylinder number must be between 1-199. Cylinder 0 is reserved for the system.

Track number must be between 0-19. Track number 0 is assumed if track number is not specified.

Split cylinder file support on the 5445 disk allows for an additional LOCATION parameter:

LOCATION-file name

For a discussion on how the LOCATION parameter is used when specifying split cylinder files, see Split Cylinder Files.

DISK FILE STATEMENT (continued)

RETAIN: The RETAIN parameter is used to classify files according to their use: scratch, temporary, or permanent.

A scratch file is normally used only once in a program and not retrieved after the program has ended. A scratch file cannot be used as an input file unless RETAIN-A is specified, however, a scratch file can be retrieved if a previous program has defined it as a permanent or temporary file and then redefined it as a scratch file. To change a permanent file to a scratch file you must use a utility program. A temporary file can become a scratch file by using a utility program or by using a RETAIN-S parameter. A RETAIN-A parameter is needed to change a scratch file to a temporary file. A scratch file cannot become a permanent file unless it becomes a temporary file first. A temporary file can be changed to a permanent file only if the file name is changed and copied as a permanent file. The system will overlay a scratch file if the disk pack is full and/or file space is needed by a new file or by a system program.

A temporary file is usually used more than once. The area containing a temporary file can be only given to another file under one of the following conditions:

- 1. A FILE statement containing the RETAIN-S parameter is supplied for the temporary file. This converts the temporary file to a scratch file.
- 2. Another file with the same LABEL name is loaded into the exact area occupied by the temporary file but this only changes the data. Space and location parameters are required.
- 3. The File Delete program is used to delete the file.

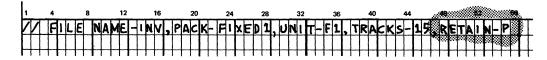
The area containing a permanent file cannot be used for any other file until the File Delete program has deleted the permanent file.

A disk file is classified as scratch, temporary, or permanent when it is created. If the RETAIN parameter is omitted from the FILE statement when the file is created, the file is assumed to be a temporary file. The RETAIN parameter may be omitted when accessing an existing file; however, RETAIN-A must be coded to reactivate a scratch file which changes to a temporary file.

The keyword for the parameter is RETAIN. It must be followed by a code that indicates the classifications of the file. The codes are:

Code	Meaning
S	Scratch file
т	Temporary file
Ρ	Permanent file
А	Reactivate scratch file

The RETAIN parameter for a permanent file is coded as follows:



38

DATE: The DATE parameter tells the system the date of a file. It is used to ensure that the proper version of the file is referenced.

When a file is created on disk, its LABEL name and creation date are written on the disk as identification. The system date is the date used. (The system date is explained under *DATE Statement*.) More than one file on a disk can be given the same name. The creation dates of these files must, however, be different. To reference such a file, you can use its name and date (see Example 4), or its name and location on disk. If neither the date nor the location is given, the file having the latest date is the one automatically referenced.

The keyword for this parameter is DATE. It must be followed by a 6-digit number representing the date (two more spaces are allowed for punctuation delimiters).

The date can be coded in one of two forms: month-day-year (mmddyy) or day-month-year (ddmmyy). You must specify the form when the system is generated. The date you specify in the DATE parameter must be in that form. The date can be coded with or without punctuation. For example, July 31, 1971, might be coded in any one of the following ways:

073171 310771 07/31/71 31/07/71

Month, day, and year must each be 2-digit numbers but lead zeros in month and day may be omitted when punctuation is used (7-31-71 or 31-7-71). A blank, comma, number, or quote cannot be used to punctuate the date.

To illustrate this parameter, assume that two versions of a file are written on the same disk. In the next example are the NAME, LABEL, and DATE parameters for two versions of a file on the same disk, one written on April 5, 1971, the other on August 3, 1971. Both files have the same label: F0001.

1	4			{	<u> 8.</u>	és:	ŝ	1	2				31	.		~	2	0				24	1			3	8				32				36	5			4	0			4	4			2	18			J	52			~	5	6	~		*	60	3	~		. (64	Ļ
11	F	=/	L	ε	1	V/	1	M	E	-	F	1	L	E		4	,	D	A	T	E	-	¢	4	4,	1	5	5	/	7	1	ł	P	A	C	k	1-	·h	10)1		1	,	U	N	1	7	-	R	1		Ĺ	A	B	ε	L	Ţ	-]	F	ø	Ø	q	5				Ī
Π	Π					T								Ι											T									Γ	Γ	Γ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ		Τ	Τ														T			Γ	Γ
11	F	1	2	E	1	T	4	4	Ε	-	F	1	L	E		B	,	D	A	T			Ø		3	1	Ø	3	1	1	1	>	U	N	1	1	-	1	21		,	P	A	C .	K	-	V	0	L	1	1	L	A	B	E	L	ŀ	-	F	ø	¢	1	1			Γ	I
Π	Π	Τ		1	1	1	T				**					1			୍			~		T	T	1								Γ	Γ	Γ	T	T	T	T	Τ	Τ	T	Τ		Τ					୍	8			I				8			Ī	T	1	ា	Γ	Ī
	IT	T		T	Т	T	T	T					Т	Т	T	T	T	Т						T	Т	Т	1						Γ	Γ	Г	Γ	Τ	Т	Т	Т	Т	T	T	T	T	T		1	1	1	1				Г	Т	T	T			Γ	Т	T	T		Г	I

HIKEY: The HIKEY parameter must be used when you define a multivolume indexed file. The highest keyfield for each pack must be entered. For further information and an example of HIKEY see *Multivolume Files* under *Using OCL*.

SPLIT: The SPLIT parameter is used when creating and maintaining split cylinder files on a 5445 disk. For further information on SPLIT see *Split Cylinder Files.*

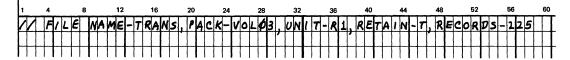
Examples

The following are examples of FILE statements. In each example, the file is described first, then the corresponding FILE statement is shown.

Example 1: Suppose that each week you create a disk file that contains the records for the transactions you had made that week. Assume the following facts about that file:

- The name your program uses to refer to the file is TRANS, which is also the name you want to use to identify the file on disk.
- You are placing the file on a removable disk named VOL03.
- You intend to mount the disk on drive one.
- You want to save the file for use at the end of the month.
- The file contains 225 records.
- You are letting the system choose the disk area that will contain the file.

The following example shows how the FILE statement for the preceding file is coded when using a 5444 disk.



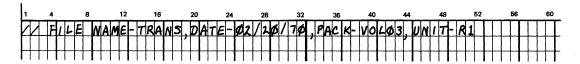
The FILE statement when using a 5445 disk would be:

1	:	N	an 3	пе 4	ę	,	6	7	8	0p 9	er 1	ati 0	ior 11	1	2	13	14	1 1	15	16	13	1	8	19	20	2	1	0 22	pe 23	ran 24	d 25	5 2	6	27	28	29	. 3	0 :	31	32	3	3 3	43	35	36	37	38	8 3	39	40	41	4	24	34	14 4	45	46	47	48	\$ 49	9 5	0 8	51	52	53	54	5	5 ŧ	56	57	58	F 5	ler 9 e	nai 50	k٤ 61
1	1	T	T	F	1	1		Ε		N	1	7	M	E	Ξ	-	7	1	2	A	1	115	5	,	F	1	7	c	к	-	1	1	0	L	q	53	5		u	N	Z		P	_	D	1	T,	Ţ	R	ε	7	4		t	V	1	Т		R	E	k	:1	2	R	D	S	Γ-	- :	2	2	5		T	Τ	
		T				Τ	T				Τ			Γ	T			T				T	1		Γ	T					T	T	V		T	T	T	1				T	T				ľ	T	1			T	T	T	T				Γ	T	T	T		1			Γ	T					T		
Γ	Т	Т	Т		Г	Т	Т	1		Γ	Т	Т		Т	Т		Г	T	7	-	T	Т	Т		Г	Т	T			Г	Т	T			Γ	T	T	1			Г	T	T	1		1	T	T				T	T	1					T	T	T	T		1		Γ	Г	T				T	T	1	-

Example 2: Suppose you had created, on the same disk (VOL03), four versions of the transaction file described in the preceding example—one for each of the weeks in February, 1970. Assume the following:

- You had created the files on the following days: 2/6/70, 2/13/70, 2/20/70, and 2/27/70 (these were the system dates used for each of the files).
- You want to reference the third file (the one created 2/20/70).
- You intend to mount the disk on drive one.

The file statement you would need is:



DISK FILE STATEMENT (continued)

Example 3: Suppose at the end of the month you combine the files referred to in Example 2, for use in preparing your monthly bills. Further assume the following:

- Your program uses the name TRANS to refer to the file, but you want to use the name BILLING to identify the file on disk.
- You are expressing the amount of disk space as the number of tracks required to contain the file (assume the number is 15), and you want the file to begin on track 8.
- You are placing the file on a removable disk named VOL01.
- You intend to mount the disk on drive one.

The following example shows the FILE statement you would use for this file.

1	4				8			1	2				16				20				24				28				32			
M	Τ	F	1	L	E	Π		v.	4	M	E	-	T	R	A	N	S		L	A	8	ε	L	F	B	1	L	L	1	N	G	
11	T	Γ					1	1	Y	1	T	-	R	1		P	A	c	K	-	V	0	L	Ø	1					Ē		,
1	T	T	-			Π	1	r	R	A	Ċ	K	ى	-	1	5		2	0	C	A	T	1	0	N	-	8					
11	T	T		Π			1	R	5	7	A	1	N	-	T		,						_					7		Γ		
TT	Т	Г				Π	T	T				Ē																				
	T	T		T			1	T				Γ																				-

Example 4: Suppose you want to create two versions of two files on disk and later to access one version of each file. Further assume the following:

- The names your program uses to refer to the files are AA and BB, which are also the names you want to use to identify the files on disk.
- File AA is being placed on a fixed disk on drive two named FIXED2.
- File BB is being placed on a removable disk named REM5.
- You intend to mount the disk on drive two.
- One version of each file is created on 5/11/70 and 5/12/70.
- Disk space and location for the files are:

File	Version	Tracks	Location
AA	5/11/70	10	200
	5/12/70	10	210
BB	5/11/70	20	200
	5/12/70	20	220

You want to access file AA, version 5/11/70 and file BB, version 5/12/70.

DISK FILE STATEMENT (continued)

1		4	_	_			8	_		_	1	2	_		_	16			_	2	0				24	_		_	28		_	_	3	2	_,			36				40	,			44
×	C	R	ļ	Ę	4	7	E	\$		ŀ	1	ļ	ę.	5	(0	٨	S	1	K	기	F		F	1	4	E	S	1	¥	4	1	4	H	M	D	_	B	Ø	4-	+	+	╞	1	-	-
1	+	F		ł	7	E	-	0	5		1	ł	ł	1	1	0	-	┝	+	+	-	+		Η		-	-	+	┝	ł	t	┽	+	1				-	╞	╀	╀	+	╀	+	┝	-
X	1	ľ	ĺ	t	2	D		Ē	IS F	ł	ł	ł	Ť	Ŧ	4	p	ī	t-	t	$^{+}$	+	1	~	-	-	F		h	t	t	t	\dagger	$^{+}$	1	-			-	t	t	t	t	t	t	t	ŀ
X	1	È	f	T.	1	Ē		ĥ	'n	t	1,	T	T	1	ž	1	i	i.	t	t	ħ		F	0		F	1	t	L	ł.	F	E	iħ	ł	F	n	0		t	t	t	t	t	t	t	t
1	1	ľ	ť	T	1	۶		T	F	1	1	1	Į.	1		オ	0	ľ	ĥ	1	a	r	٨	T	ì	ŀ	N	2	6	1	Ł	ž	T	à	5	4	N	1	R	t	ħ	t	+-	t	t	t
1	1	F	t	İ	1	F	-	Ň	1	Ĭ,	1,	ť	Ì	2	R	•	ĩ	K	ľ	1	f	-	R	2		þ	٨	r	K	ſ	i.	2	ť	1	Ξ	4	-	μ	ľ	-	۲	t	t	t	t	ŀ
11	1	ľ	ť	T	1	-		F	F	Ť,	ľ	1	X	1		ì	7	1	٢	ť	2	d	Λ	Ŷ	1	h	N	2	2	6	50	ì		1	9)		t	t	t	t	t	t	t	t	t
11	1	F	İ	Ì	Y			ľ		ſ	T	ľ	Ť	1	-	-	-	1	ľ	T	1					۲			Ĩ	ľ	T		Ť	1					T	t	t	T	t	T	Γ	ŀ
_			I	Ł					ļ				Ţ	-				-	Į					IJ													_		L	L	Ļ		L			L
K	r	R	ł	ľ	J	I	E	S		ł	ψ	K	7	Π	Н	E	R		N	4	7	R	S	1	0	N	-	C	X	1	F	Ŧ	Щ	+	E	S		F	4	4	P	M	ID	1	B	l
1	1	1	k	7	7	D		R	F	ł.	ł		a:	1	-	R	1	-	t	t	+	1	-				-	-	+	ł	+	+	t	1	-		-	-	t	t	+	t	t	╞	t	ł
11	1	Ē	Ĺ	V	r	F		0	5	D	1	Ĩ	2	1	7	Ø		t	T	t	1	1	1			-	1	ſ	t	t	t	t	T	1	1			1	T	t	t	T	t	T	T	T
Ň	1	F	Ī	Ť		Ē	Γ		A						۸		1	h	İ	ĥ	r	-	F	2		F	Δ	C	k	1-	F	Ť	ı,	d	F	D	2		f	t	t	t	T	T	t	T
11	1	Ť	ť	T	Ĩ	-			R				d			1	1	T	Ī	1	2	C	A	T	;	'n	N	L	2	Ì	l	1	T	1)	T	T	t	t	T	T	T	ſ
Ň	1	F	t	i	1	F		N	1	1	4	ſ	1	3									R						k	Į.	k	SI	-1	1	5			-	Г	T	T	T	T	T	T	t
11	1	ľ	ľ	T	1			F	F	i,	J.	1	1	5	-	3	ø	Γ.	I	1	2	C	A	T	1	a	٨	1-	2	1	2	5	T	1		,		1	Г	T	T	T	T	T	T	ſ
11	1	F	ł	1	I	_		Ľ		Ī	T	I	I					Γ											Γ	I	ľ	T							Ľ	Ī	I	I				
		×	ļ		_	C	C	F	c	-	ł	+	1	+	c			-	ļ	2	-		0	2			c	c	-	ł,	NE				_		ĉ		Ļ	6	: 5	-	ł-	-	-	ŀ
-	f	¥.	f	-	1	2	Э	F	F	1	ť	1	μ	-	5	-	Y	E	ſ	f	7	4	4	Ľ	2		۲	F	╞	ť	10	ľ	4	4	٦	-	Г	μ	ŀ	F	f	1	┢	┢	┢	ł
1	1	1	k	Ż	4	D	-	k	F	Ý	Ż	1		1	Ŕ	1	-	t	t	t	1	1	1	Η		-		T	T	t	t	t	t	1	-			F	t	t	t	t	t		t	t
11	1	F	1	ľ	T	F	~	N	1	ŀ	1	I	-1	5	A		U	h	1	1	đ	-	F	2		P	4	C	×	1	F	-		d	Ē	D	2	Ī,	Г	T	T	T	T	Γ	Γ	Γ
N	1	T	T	T	1			Ľ	C	X	V	ł					-	2	4	0	2				Ť					L				1				7	Γ	T	T	T	T	Γ	Γ	Γ
N	1	F				E		N	A		16		-	3	B		U	1	I	-	П	-	R	2	,	F	A	C	ŀ	₽	F	d	E	1	5				Γ	T	T	Τ		Ι	Γ	
1	1		Ι	T				C	V	U			-	2	5	1	1	6	1	1	7	Z					[Γ	T	T	T			1			Γ		T				Γ	ſ
11	1	F	ł	J	V	1		Γ	T	Τ	T	T	T					Γ	T	T	T	1					Γ	Γ	Τ	T	Τ	T	T	I				[Г	T	T	T	Г	Γ	Γ	Γ

The following OCL statements are needed to create the above versions of files AA and BB and to access a version of each file.

File Processing Considerations

LOCATION and space (TRACKS or RECORDS) must be specified when you are reloading an existing temporary file.

- If you are referencing a file by the DATE parameter and space is given, the space must be equal to the space given when that file was created.
- If you are accessing a file by the LOCATION parameter and space is given, the space must be equal to the space given when that file was created.
- You can create several versions of a file with a program by changing the locations of the files and using different system dates.
- You can create different versions of a file without LOCATION if the space parameters as well as the system dates are different.
- The system assumes that a new file is being created if space is given without LOCATION or DATE and the given filename was found but its space does not match.
- The DATE parameter is only allowed for accessing existing files.
- Whenever a load is performed to an existing file, the system date replaces the previous date for that file.
- If a RETAIN parameter is not specified when reloading an existing file, the existing file classification is retained.
- When a scratch file is created, it is not entered in the Volume Table of Contents (VTOC). After the job that created the file is run, the file is lost. The way that an S retain type can appear in the VTOC is to change a T entry to an S by using RETAIN-S in the FILE statement, or to change a T or P entry to S by using a \$DELET SCRATCH statement.

Function	The FILE statement supplies the system with information about tape files. The system uses this information to read records from and write records to tape.
Placement	You must supply a FILE statement for each new tape file that your program creates, and for each existing tape file that your program uses. The FILE statement must follow the LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.
Format	// FILE parameters
Contents	All parameters are keyword parameters. The parameters are as follows (keywords are in capital letters): — NAME-filename (in program)
	– UNIT-code
	- REEL- { name NL NS
	— LABEL- { filename (on tape) { 'character string'
	- DATE-date
	RETAIN-code
	 BLKL-block length
	- RECL-record length
	 RECFM-code (record format)
	 END-position of tape after processing 1600
	$- DENSITY - \begin{cases} 1000 \\ 800 \\ 556 \\ 200 \end{cases}$
	– ASCII- ASCII- NO
	- DEFER- YES NO
	– CONVERT- OFF ON
	- TRANSLATE- OFF ON
	– PARITY- ODD

TAPE FILE STATEMENT (continued)

The NAME and UNIT parameters are always required. The others are required only under certain conditions.

NAME: The NAME parameter is required. It tells the system the name that your program uses to refer to the file. The NAME parameter must be placed on the first card or line if two or more cards or lines are used for the FILE statement. (See *General Coding Rules* for rules on continuation.)

٤

For the Tape Sort program, you must use specific names for files.

File	Name
Input	INPUT
Output	OUTPUT
Work	WORK1
	WORK2
	WORK3

WORK4 (optional)

For the Dump/Restore program, you must use the name BACKUP in the name parameter. The keyword for the parameter is NAME. It must be followed by the filename used by the program. The first character of the NAME must be alphabetic. The remaining characters can be any combination of characters except commas, apostrophes, or blanks. The number of characters cannot exceed 8. The following example shows how the NAME parameter for a file named FICAOUT would be coded:

0	CI	L	57	-Α	\T	Έ	M	E	N	T	S																													
1	4	ţ			8				12				16			:	20			24			1	28			:	32			3	36				40	1		44	
M		F	I	L	E		Γ	N	A	M	E	-	F	1	C	A	0	υ	7	R	E	E	4	-	7	A	P	E	1		V	M	Γ	T	-	7	2		Γ	Γ
Π		T	Τ					Γ	Γ	Γ									Π				Τ				1			1							Γ	Γ	Γ	Γ
H	1	1	T	1				1	1							Η							1	-		1	1	1		1	1								t	t.

UNIT: The UNIT parameter is required. It tells the system the tape unit that contains or will contain the file. The keyword for this parameter is UNIT. It must be followed by a code that indicates the unit. The codes are as follows:

- T1 Tape unit one
- T2 Tape unit two
- T3 Tape unit three
- T4 Tape unit four

The previous example shows how the UNIT parameter would be coded for a file that resides on tape unit two.

REEL: The REEL parameter is required for tape input files and optional for output files. It identifies the tape that contains or will contain the file. The system uses this parameter to ensure that the correct tape is being used. (For information about how a tape is initialized and identified, see *Tape Initialization* in Part II of this manual.)

The REEL parameter can be coded as follows:

REEL-nnnnnn	This format is used for labeled tape volumes. The volume is identified by coding a maximum of six characters, excluding commas, apostrophes, and blanks. NS and NL have special meanings and may not be used as the name of the reel.
REEL-NL	This coding indicates a tape file without a label. The first record of an unlabeled tape must not be an 80-byte record beginning with VOL1.
REEL-NS	This coding indicates an input tape file with a non-standard label. These labels do not adhere to the IBM Tape Label Standard. The first record of a non-standard labeled tape must not be an 80-byte record with VOL1 as the first four characters.

If the REEL parameter is not specified for an output file, the system assumes the output tape contains standard labels. If REEL-NS or REEL-NL is used, the LABEL, DATE, and RETAIN parameters may not be entered.

REEL-NS is invalid for output files.

Note: User labels are file labels that follow standard header and trailer label conventions (ANSI or IBM). They are a variation of standard labels with a partially fixed format. These labels are sometimes provided by other systems. User labels are not checked by System/3 tape data management and may not be written as part of the label group.

The example under NAME shows how the REEL parameter would be coded for a file on a tape named TAPE1.

LABEL: The LABEL parameter tells the system the name (label) of the tape file as it exists in the header label.

For file creation, the name you supply in the LABEL parameter is used in the header label. If you omit the LABEL parameter, the name from the NAME parameter is used unless REEL-NS or REEL-NL is also specified. Up to eight characters may be supplied in the LABEL parameter.

For existing files, you must supply the label parameter if the name in the tape label is different from the name your program uses to refer to the file (the NAME parameter). If the header label contains a name longer than eight characters, only the first eight characters are recognized by the system for comparison.

The LABEL parameter may not be used with the parameters REEL-NS or REEL-NL. The LABEL parameter can be coded as follows:

LABEL-name

The name entry must begin with an alphabetic character and the remaining characters must not be commas, apostrophes, or blanks.

LABEL-'character string'	A label may also be identified using special characters.
	The character string must be enclosed in apostrophes,
	may not contain commas, and is restricted to eight
	characters in length. If an apostrophe is used as a
	character, it must be coded as two apostrophes.

DATE: The DATE parameter tells the system the creation date of an input file. It is used to ensure that the proper version of the file is used. The date specified is compared against the creation date contained in the file label. No comparison is done when DATE is not specified.

For output files, the system date is always used as the creation date. If the DATE parameter is specified for an output file, the system compares the specified date with the creation date of the file already on the tape. If no file exists on the tape, or a file with a different label exists, or the dates do not agree, the system halts.

The date may be coded in one of two formats: month-day-year (mmddyy), or day-month-year (ddmmyy). The format must match the format of the system date chosen at system generation time.

The DATE parameter may not be specified with REEL-NS or REEL-NL.

RETAIN: The RETAIN parameter specifies the number of days a file should be retained before it expires. This number may be from 0 to 999. After the number of days has elapsed, the file expires and the system allows the file to be written over. If the RETAIN parameter is omitted, a value of zero is assumed. A value of 999 indicates a non-expiring permanent tape file.

If an attempt is made to write over an unexpired file, the system halts, allowing the operator to cancel the job or continue. A tape containing a permanent tape file must be reinitialized before it can be used for output. The RETAIN parameter may not be used with REEL-NS or REEL-NL.

BLKL: The BLKL (block length) parameter specifies the number of bytes in a physical block on tape. The block length can be from 18 bytes to 32,767 bytes. The maximum length is limited to the main storage not occupied by the program and supervisor. The block length must be an integral multiple of the record length for fixed (F) and fixed blocked (FB) files (see RECFM parameter). If an ASCII file is being used, any existing block prefixes must be included in the block length.

RECL: The RECL (record length) parameter specifies the number of bytes in a logical record. The maximum record length is 32,767 bytes. The minimum record length permitted for F and FB type files is 18 bytes (see RECFM parameter). The record length for V, VB, D, and DB type files must include the four-byte record descriptor.

RECFM: The RECFM (record format) parameter identifies the format of the input or output file records. The parameter entries are:

- F Fixed length, unblocked records. Logical and physical records are the same size.
- V Variable length, unblocked records. Each physical record contains one logical record; the logical record can vary in length.
- D Variable length, unblocked records in the D-type ASCII format.
- FB Fixed length, blocked records. All records are of equal length and all blocks are of equal length. Each physical record contains more than one logical record.
- VB Variable length, blocked records. Each physical record contains logical records of various lengths.
- DB Variable length, blocked records in the D-type ASCII format.

END: The END parameter specifies the position of the tape after the file has been processed. The options are as follows:

- LEAVE The tape remains in the position it was in after the last record was read or written.
- REWIND The tape is rewound to the load point.
- UNLOAD The tape is rewound and unloaded for removal from the tape drive.
- If the END parameter is omitted, REWIND is assumed.

DENSITY: The DENSITY parameter is used to specify the number of BPI (bits per inch) at which files are to be written or read. The parameter must specify the density at which the tape was initialized. See \$TINIT (Tape Initialization Program) description in this manual. For nine track tapes this parameter affects only the density of non-labeled output files. When standard labeled or non-standard labeled tapes are used, the tape hardware will automatically determine the density at which the tape was initialized. When a tape is initialized to 1600 bpi with standard labels, any file that is written on that tape will be in 1600 bpi, regardless of the parameter specified for DENSITY. No error halts will occur if an incorrect nine track density is specified. The parameter entries are:

- 1600 The file is to be written at 1600 bits per inch (valid for all nine track tape units).
- 800 The file is to be written or read at 800 bits per inch (valid for nine track dual density tape units or for all seven track tape units).
- 556 The file is to be written or read at 556 bits per inch (valid for all seven track tape units).

200 — The file is to be written or read at 200 bits per inch (valid for all seven track tape units).

If the DENSITY parameter is omitted, 1600 bits per inch is assumed on nine track tape units, and 800 bits per inch is assumed on seven track tape units.

ASCII: The ASCII parameter (ASCII-YES or ASCII-NO) is used to indicate to the system when an ASCII file is being used. If ASCII files are being used, ASCII-YES must be coded. ASCII-YES is invalid for files on seven track tape units. If this parameter is omitted or coded ASCII-NO, an EBCDIC file is assumed.

DEFER: The DEFER parameter (DEFER-YES or DEFER-NO) tells the system whether the file will be mounted on a tape drive when the file is allocated and opened. If the tape volume is not online, DEFER-YES must be coded. If the parameter is omitted, DEFER-NO is assumed.

Note: For RPG II object programs, this option should only be used for files that use the same drive as a table file. All other files are allocated and opened at the beginning of the program.

Other programs (such as COBOL object programs) which do not allocate and open all files at the same time, or which do so conditionally by program logic, should not use the DEFER-YES option.

CONVERT: The CONVERT parameter tells the system whether the data converter will be turned on or off. This parameter is valid only for seven track tape files. CONVERT-ON causes seven track data to be processed in eight bit binary form. The convertor writes three main storage characters as four tape characters, and converts the opposite way when reading. CONVERT-ON must be specified when processing variable length records on seven track tape files. Specifying both CONVERT-ON and TRANSLATE-ON is invalid. If this parameter is omitted, CONVERT-OFF is assumed.

TRANSLATE: The TRANSLATE parameter tells the system whether the data translator will be turned on or off. This parameter is valid only for seven track tape files. TRANSLATE-ON causes seven track data to be processed in six bit BCD form. The translator writes eight bit EBCDIC main storage characters as six bit BCD tape characters and translates the opposite way when reading. Specifying both TRANSLATE-ON and CONVERT-ON is invalid. If this parameter is omitted, TRANSLATE-OFF is assumed.

Note: If CONVERT-OFF and TRANSLATE-OFF are specified, only the six low order bits of the main storage character are written on the tape. When reading with CONVERT-OFF and TRANSLATE-OFF the two high order bits of the main storage characters are set to zeros.

PARITY: The PARITY parameter is used to specify the parity at which tape characters will be processed. This parameter is valid only for seven track tape files. Data conversion (CONVERT-ON) is invalid with even parity (PARITY-EVEN). If this parameter is omitted, PARITY-ODD is assumed.

Note: The following are the valid combinations for TRANSLATE, CONVERT, and PARITY parameters.

- PARITY-ODD, TRANSLATE-OFF, CONVERT-OFF
- PARITY-ODD, TRANSLATE-ON
- PARITY-ODD, CONVERT-ON
- PARITY-EVEN, TRANSLATE-OFF, CONVERT-OFF
- PARITY-EVEN, TRANSLATE-ON

SEVEN TRACK CONSIDERATIONS

- 1. CONVERT, TRANSLATE, PARITY, and/or DENSITY must be specified for an input file if other than the default parameters were specified for output when the file was built, otherwise, tape runaway or data check occurs.
- 2. If an output file has REEL-NL on the file card, the reel must have been initialized with REEL-NL by the \$TINIT (Tape Initialize) program, otherwise, tape runaway or data check occurs.
- 3. If an output file has REEL-NL on the file card and there is a file existing on the tape, tape runaway or data check will occur if TRANSLATE, CONVERT, PARITY, and/or DENSITY parameters for the new file do not match the characteristics of the old file. The tape should be reinitialized using \$TINIT with REEL-NL if this occurs.

4

Function	The BSCA statement allows you to change all BSCA line specifications in your program. This allows the use of either BSCA line without recompiling the program. If the BSCA statement is not entered, the line specifications in the program are not changed.
Placement	The BSCA statement must follow the LOAD or CALL statement and precede the RUN statement.
Format	// BSCA parameter
Contents	The parameter is a keyword parameter. The parameter is LINE-code. The codes are as follows:
	Code Meaning
	1 Change all BSCA line specifications to BSCA line one.
	2 Change all BSCA line specifications to BSCA line two.

- .	- • • •	
Function	CALL statement job stream.	ts are needed only when you want to merge procedures into the
	relationship betw the OCL stateme cards or the prin	he funtion of the CALL statement, you must understand the ween the job stream and procedures. The job stream contains ents that control the system. The system reads it either from iter-keyboard. Procedures are sets of OCL statements in a source They have no effect on the system until they are merged into
	other OCL state <i>Parameters)</i> afte procedure. The The RUN statem	the procedure identified by a CALL statement, by providing ements (procedure override statements, see <i>Changing Procedure</i> r the CALL statement. These statements temporarily modify the last statement of the CALL sequence must be a RUN statement. nent is required, however, whether or not you supply other OCL procedures are further explained in <i>Procedures</i> .)
Placement	effect, replaced l	ts can be used in the job stream or in a procedure. They are, in by the procedures they identify. The last statement of the CALL re a RUN statement.
Format	// CALL procedu	ure-name,unit
Contents	in the source lib ance control stat	The procedure-name is the name that identifies the procedure rary. You supply the procedure-name in the Library Mainten- tements when you use the program to place the procedure in the <i>prary Maintenance</i> in Part II of this manual for restrictions on .)
		parameter is a code. The code indicates where the disk that con- ure is located on the disk unit. The codes are as follows:
	Code	Meaning
	R1	Removable disk on drive one
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one
	R2	Removable disk on drive two
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two
Example		L statement example here. The following section, <i>Procedures</i> , statement examples.

PARTITION STATEMENT

Function	The PARTITION statement is used only in DPF systems and guarantees a minimum size to program level two for a program in that level.
Placement	The PARTITION statement can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements preceding the RUN statement.
Format	// PARTITION size
Content	<i>Size:</i> The size parameter specifies the number of bytes of storage needed for program level two. (See Loading Programs in a DPF Environment.)

LOCKOUT STATEMENT

Function	The LOCKOUT statement is used only in DPF systems.
	It is used to suspend the other program level to allow fast job initiation in the program level in which it is entered. Job initiation is slowed if both program levels use the system transient area and/or disk drive one. The other program level remains suspended until job initiation is complete.
	<i>Note:</i> This statement should not be used when the active program level is using time dependent devices such as BSCA and serial I/O channel.
Placement	The LOCKOUT statement can be placed anywhere among the OCL statements, but must precede the RUN statement.
Format	// LOCKOUT
Content	None (Comments may be entered starting in column 12.)

PROCEDURES

Procedures are sets of OCL statements in a source library on disk. Procedures can be put into the source library by using the Library Maintenance program. (See Part II of this manual, *Library Maintenance, Copy Function, Reader-to-Disk.*) Procedures must contain one and only one, LOAD statement. All other OCL statements except /& are allowed in procedures. The CALL statement is allowed only in nested procedures (see *Nested Procedures*). Object programs loaded from cards (LOAD^{*}) are not allowed in procedures. The object programs are loaded from the system input device. However, LOAD^{*} statements are allowed in procedures.

A maximum of 25 utility control statements can be included in procedures for the utility programs. The utility statements must follow the OCL statements in the procedure. (See *Library Maintenance*, Part II of this manual.) A RUN statement must be the last OCL statement in the procedure to separate the OCL statements from the utility control statements. The RUN statement in the job stream, rather than the one in the procedure, causes the system to run the program.

An example of a procedure is shown in Figure 9. This procedure will be referred to in all of the following examples. Assume that the name of the procedure is PROC1. The procedure-name is the name that identifies the procedure in the source library. Further assume that the procedure is contained on the fixed disk on drive one (F1).

Normal Procedure Call

To merge the procedure (unchanged) into the job stream, the statements in Figure 10 would be used in the job stream.

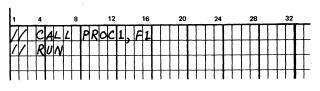


Figure 10. Normal Call for Procedure

Changing Procedure Parameters

You can change any of the parameters in any of the statements in the procedure for one job, by placing procedure override statements between the CALL and RUN statements. Procedure override statements modify the procedure for one job only. For example, assume you wanted to make the following changes to procedure PROC1 (see Figure 9):

- In the first FILE statement (NAME-DALTOT), change the RECORDS parameter from RECORDS-1500 to RECORDS-1750.
- Change the parameter in the SWITCH statement from XXX01XX0 to XXX10XX1.

Figure 11 shows the statements needed in the job stream to call and modify PROC1. Note that the NAME parameter is also supplied in the FILE statement. This is necessary to identify the FILE statement to which the change applies.

1		4				8			12				16				20		_		24				28				32		
И	Λ			С	A	L	٢	ρ	R	0	С	1		F	1																Π
1	1			F	1	L	E	W	A	M	E	-	6	A	L	T	0	7		R	E	C	0	R	D	S	-	1	7	5	Ø
Z	1	S	W	1	T	c	H	X	X	X	1	Ø	x	X	1	1			,					Γ							T
1	/			R	U	W					Γ	-		Ĺ																	Π
n					-			-																							T

Figure 11. Call for Procedure: Changing Parameters

Delete a Procedure Parameter

Besides changing a parameter you can delete a parameter in a procedure statement entirely if it is a keyword parameter. To delete a parameter in any of the statements you must code the keyword and the hyphen and follow them immediately with a

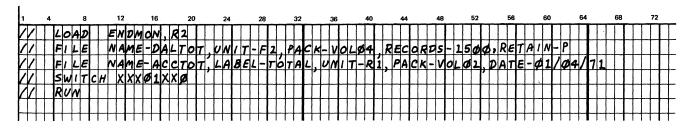


Figure 9. Procedure Example

comma. The statement in Figure 12 deletes the RETAIN parameter completely.



Figure 12. Deleting a Procedure Parameter

Adding a Statement

You can add statements to the procedure by placing the statements you are adding between the CALL and RUN statements. For example, assume that you wanted to add a NOHALT statement to the procedure. Figure 13 shows the statements needed in the job stream.

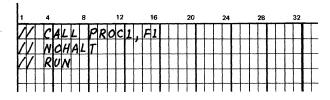


Figure 13. Call for Procedure: Adding a Statement

Add Missing Parameter

You can omit any of the parameters from all OCL statements in a procedure. If you do, you must supply the missing parameters between the CALL and RUN statements. For example, assume that the procedure contained the LOAD statement shown in Figure 14. The statements in Figure 15 would be needed in the job stream to run the ENDMON program. Note that the entire LOAD statement did not have to be supplied. Only the missing parameter was included.

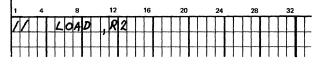
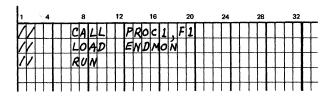
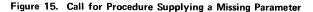


Figure 14. LOAD Statement Missing a Parameter





Example

Procedure override statements are printed on the logging device along with the statements in the job stream. Assume that the statements in Figure 16 are used in the job stream. The statements from the procedure would be merged with the preceding statements and printed as shown in Figure 17.

Statements preceded by XX represent the procedure statements as they appear in the source library. The CALL and RUN statements and any statements which are intended as overrides to procedure statements or additions to the procedures begin with //.



Figure 16. Call for Procedure Example

11	CALL PROC1,F1
XX	LOAD ENDMON, R2
XX	FILE NAME-DALTOT, UNIT-F2, PACK-VOLO4, RECORDS-1500, RETAIN-P
11	FILE NAME-DALTOT, RECORDS-1750
XX	FILE NAME-ACCTOT, LABEL-TOTAL, UNIT-R1, PACK-VOLO2, DATE-01/04/71
XX	SWITCH XXX01XX0
11	SWITCH XXX10XX1
11	NOHALT
XX	RUN
11	RUN

Figure 17. Printout of Sample Case

Nested Procedures

Some procedures are done in the same order every time a job is performed. Nesting procedures is a convenient way to link the procedures together and requires you to call only the first procedure. Each procedure will call the next procedure until the job has been completed.

By nesting procedures together several benefits can be realized.

- Programs are always run in the correct sequence.
- Operator intervention (and chance of operator error) is decreased.
- File space can be saved. Files used to pass data from job to job can be scratched after the last program.
- Files are less likely to be destroyed by running nonrelated programs between programs of a job.

Here is an example of how nested procedures might be used. Suppose you want to back up a fixed disk pack containing files which will be used in the future. The OCL statements and utility control statements to copy one disk pack (F2) to another disk (R2) would look like this if nested procedures were *not* used: By using nested procedures these control statements could be stored on disk and the job could be performed by calling only one procedure. Figure 18 shows the three procedures needed to perform the copy job described. There is only one CALL statement necessary in the job stream from the system input service.

This CALL statement links the job stream to a master procedure (CPYF22) which is used to call the procedure necessary to perform the job. CPYF22 contains three CALL statements that call the three procedures necessary to copy F2 to R2. Notice that CPYF22 contains only CALL statements. Any procedure within nested procedures can consist entirely of CALL statements and does not need a RUN statement to indicate the end of the procedure. Nested procedures allow you to have an unrestricted number of CALL statements in a procedure. Therefore CPYF22 could have more then three CALL statements if you felt it necessary to add any procedures.

<u> </u>	_					8		10				14		1.	6				20					25					3	0					35						40						45	_					50					55	;	_		_	_	60)	-	_		 65			
1	1		L	0	A	\mathcal{D}			\$	M	A	1	N	17	٢,	, 1	F	1																												-1			1								1						1	1								
$\overline{\Lambda}$	1		R	U	N														T											T	T								T	T				T						T	T	T								T					Γ	Τ					T	
1	1		A	L	1	0	C	A	Т	E		T	0) _	.J	Ż	2	, ,	S,	0	U	R	C	E	-	Ø	,	0	E	3.	r!	5	C	7	_	Ø			T					T	T					T	T	T	T	T				Γ	T	T				Γ	Γ					Γ	T	-
1	1			W			-					ľ	T	T	f	Ť	Ť	T	T							-	ľ		T	T	T	1		1	1	ľ	T	T	T	T	1		T	t	1				T	T	T	T	T	T					T	T					T	T	1	7	Π	Γ	T	
П	T		T					1				-	t	T	T	T	1	T	1									T	T	T	Ť	1		1		1	T		t	T				T	1				T	T	T	T	1	T		-		F	T	T	T		Γ	Γ	T	T	T			Γ	T	_
1	1	T	L	0	A	D		1	\$	D	Ē	L	E	7	٦,	,Ť	F.	1	1	1									t	T	T	1	1	1	1		T	T	t	T	1			t	1				t	T	T	T	T	1			-	ſ	t	t	1		Π	Γ	T	T	1	1		Γ	Ť	-
1	1			U				1					Γ	T	1				1										T	T	T	1		1			T	T	t	T			T	t	T				t	T	1	T	1	T					T	T	1			Γ	T	T	T	1		Γ	T	
1	1		R	E	M	0	Y	E			U	N	1	7	1.	-/	e:	2	,	P	A	C	K	-	X	X	X	X)		A.		L	A	B	E	2	-	-1	V	T	0	C		Τ				Τ	T	T	T		T				Γ	Γ	T	T			Γ							T	
1	1	T		N				1					T	T	T	Ť	1	Ť	1										ľ	T	T		1	T		T		T	T	T				T	1				T	T	T	T	T	1					T	T	T			Γ	T	T	T			Γ	Ţ	-
\square	T												Γ	1	T	T	T	T	1	1		1						Γ	T	T	T	1	1	T	1		T	T	T	T			Γ	T					T	T	T	T		T					T	T	T			Γ	T	T	1			Γ	T	
$\overline{\Lambda}$	1	T	L	6	A	D		1	\$	C	0	P	Y	1,	F	ŧ	1	T	1	1		1							t	T	T	1	1	T	1		T	T	T	t				T	1				T	T	1	T	1	T	1	~		Γ	T	T	1			Γ	T	T	1	1	Π	Γ	T	
1	个	T	R	U	N								Γ	Τ	Τ			T	1			1							T	T	t	1	1	T			T	T	T	1				T	T	1			t	T	T	T	T	1	1				T	T	T			Γ	T	T	T	1		1	T	
1	1	T	C	0	P	Y	P	A	C	K			F	6	1	1	4	-1	F	2	,	T	0	-	R	2			T	T	T	T	1					T	T	T				T	1				T	T		T	T	1					T	T			Π		T	T	1	1		Γ	T	-
1	1	T		W									T	t	Ť	T	Ť	Ť	Ť	1	1	1	1						t	T	t	1	1	1	1		t	T	T	T				t	T	1				T	T	T	T						T	T	1		П	Γ	T	Ť	1	1		Γ	T	
Π	T												Γ	T	T	T	T	T	T	1	1								T	T	T	1	1	1			Γ	T	T	T				T					T	T	T	T		T					T	T	1			Γ	T	T	T	T		Γ	T	-
H	T	1	T	1				1					t	t	t	T	+	+	+	1	1	1					1-	t	t	T	t	t		+	+	1	t	t	t	+	1	-		T	t	1		-	T	t	1	1	+	1	1			\vdash	t	t	1	1		T	t	t	1	+	Г	T	T	-

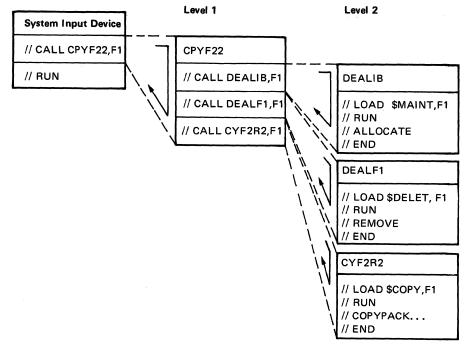
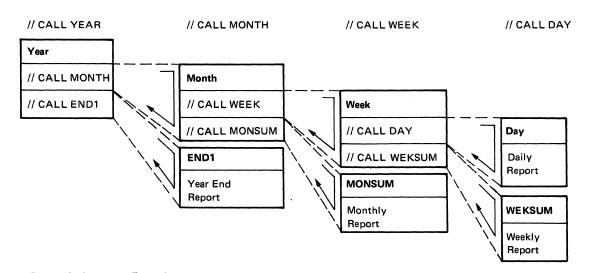
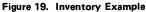


Figure 18. Nested Procedures

Figure 19 is an inventory application of nested procedures. A company issues daily reports on goods bought and sold by calling the DAY procedure. By nesting procedures together a daily report and a weekly report can be written by calling the WEEK procedure. Once a month // CALL MONTH is used to write out daily, weekly, and monthly reports. Finally, monthly, weekly, daily, and yearly reports are written once a year by calling the YEAR procedure which nests all of the other procedures together.

No more than nine levels of CALL procedures can be nested together. Levels of procedures are determined by the number of CALL statements away from the system input device a procedure is located. For instance, in Figure 19 when // CALL YEAR is given in the system input device, the





YEAR procedure would be one level away from the system input device. MONTH and END1 procedures are two levels away from the system input device when // CALL YEAR is given.

By using nested procedures, fewer control statements are needed in the job stream from the system input device. However, certain rules must be followed to make nested procedures work:

- 1. No more than nine levels of procedures are permitted.
- Each procedure may have an unrestricted number of CALL statements to the next level of procedures.
- 3. Only utility control statements can follow a RUN statement.

- 4. Procedure additions or overrides supplied between the CALL and RUN statements in the job stream are merged between the first LOAD and RUN statements encountered in the procedures (see *Example of Nesting Procedures*).
- 5. Any OCL statements permitted before the RUN statement in the job stream are also permitted anywhere before the RUN statement in a procedure (see *Example of Nesting Procedures*).

Example of Nesting Procedures

Suppose you want to decrease operator intervention by using the NOHALT statement. In Figure 18 the NOHALT statement could be placed between the CALL and RUN statements in the system input device. In this case it would be read as an additional OCL statement for the DEALIB procedure. However, it could be placed anywhere in the master procedure, CPYF22, or anywhere before the RUN statement in the DEALIB, DEALF1, or CYF2R2 procedures. The rule would still be followed no matter what procedure contained the additional OCL statement.

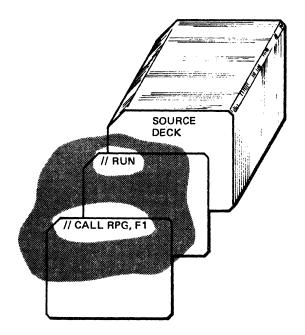
This section is designed to aid you in your use of OCL. The topics described in this manual involving the use of OCL are:

- Compiling an RPG II program
- Processing a card file
- Creating and processing a disk file
- Processing two disk files
- Processing large indexed disk files
- Processing a disk file that uses external indicators
- Creating and processing multivolume files
- Creating and processing split cylinder files
- Automatic file allocation
- Storing programs and procedures into libraries
- Checkpoint/restart
- Dual programming feature
- Statement examples

For a more complete explanation of the statements, their parameters, and coding rules refer to *Statement Descriptions* and *Coding Rules* in Part I of this manual.

COMPILING AN RPG II PROGRAM

After your RPG II program is written and recorded in cards, it must be compiled. To compile an RPG II program, two OCL statements are required, CALL and RUN.



In the preceding example the first statement, // CALL RPG,F1, tells the system to get the procedure that loads the RPG II Compiler from the fixed disk. The second statement // RUN, tells the system to run the compiler program. The source deck may follow the RUN statement or be called from disk using a COMPILE statement.

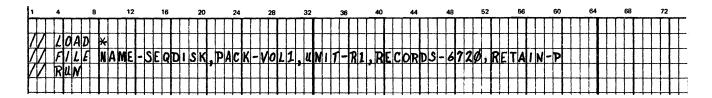
CREATING A DISK FILE

To create a sequential, direct, or indexed disk file you must tell the system the size of the file and the use of the file. To state the file size (using the FILE statement), two keywords are available: TRACKS and RECORDS. You may use one or the other, but not both.

If you use RECORDS, the system calculates the disk space required and converts it to tracks for you. If you use the TRACKS parameter, there is no need for the system to perform these calculations.

A file is classified as scratch, temporary, or permanent when it is created. You use the RETAIN parameter of the FILE statement to tell the system how to classify the use of a file. If you omit the RETAIN parameter, the file is assumed to be a temporary file.

For example, you want to create a master file of names and addresses. You would code the following:



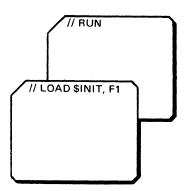
(This master file is classified as permanent.)

LOADING AND RUNNING PROGRAMS

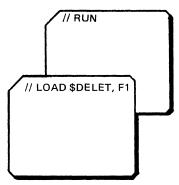
IBM Programs

Many IBM programs require only two OCL statements, LOAD and RUN.

The following examples show the OCL cards needed to load and run two IBM programs. (The Disk Initialization and File Delete programs are discussed in Part II of this manual.)



The Disk Initialization program is loaded and run.

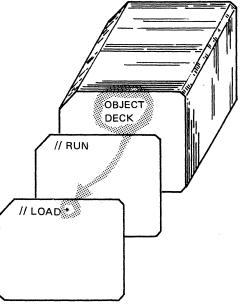


The File Delete program is loaded and run.

Object Programs Using Card Files

LOAD and RUN are the only two OCL statements needed to load and run RPG II programs that use no disk files. To run a certain job, the object program must be loaded into storage. To load an object program that is on cards (object deck), an * must follow the word LOAD. (The * tells the system that an object deck follows the RUN statement.)

For example, only these two statements are required for a program that prints data from a transaction card file.



Object Programs Using One Disk File

To load and run an object program that uses a disk file, another OCL statement is required: FILE. Three items of information must follow the word FILE:

- The name of the file.
- The name of the disk pack the file is on.
- The location of the disk pack.

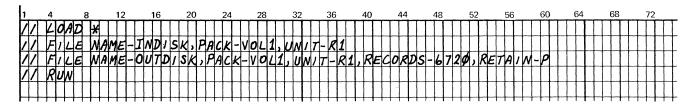
For example, you want to load and run an object program using a disk file named SEQDISK. The file resides on removable disk pack named VOL1. You would code the following:



Object Programs Using More Than One Disk File

One FILE statement is required for each disk file used by a program. To load and run an object program that uses two disk files, two FILE statements are required.

In the following example, two disk files are used: an input file (INDISK) and an output file (OUT -DISK).

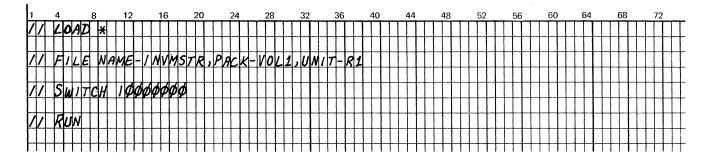


The first FILE statement contains information needed to access the data in that file. The second FILE statement contains information needed to create an output file.

Object Programs Using One Disk File and External Indicators

The SWITCH statement is used to set external indicators (U1-U8 on RPG II specifications sheets) on or off. External indicators are used to regulate when certain functions are performed.

In the following example, you are running a program using one disk file (INVMSTR), an inventory master file.



In order for the program to perform certain functions, such as updating and output, the first external indicator (U1) must be turned on. In the SWITCH statement the eight characters correspond to the eight external indicators. In this program only one external indicator (U1) is used.

Processing Large Indexed Disk Files

When additions are made to a large indexed file, the amount of time needed to sort the keys of the index at end-of-job time may be excessive. This sort time can be reduced by using a work file.

The work file is used to merge the added keys into the index, and must be large enough to contain all of the keys added to the file. If the program adds records to more than one indexed file, the work file must be large enough to contain all the keys for the file with the greatest number of additions. The work file should be located as close as possible to the index being sorted.

If the indexed file is on a 5444 disk, the work file must be named \$INDEX44 and be located on a 5444 disk. If the indexed file is on a 5445 disk, the work file must be named \$INDEX45 and be located on a 5445 disk. To determine the number of tracks required for the work file, use the following formulas:

256

number of adds \div (key length+3) \div 24 = tracks for 5444 disk

number of adds \div (key length+4) \div 20 = tracks for 5445 disk

After dividing 256 by keylength+x, the remainder should be dropped. After the other divisions, round the quotient to the next highest whole number.

If the work file is not large enough to contain all the index keys, the keys are sorted in the normal manner without using the work file. If possible, the work file should be located on a different disk drive from the indexed file whose keys are being sorted. If this is not possible, the work file should be as close as possible to the beginning of the file whose keys are being sorted. This minimizes the disk seek time.

The work file can be used with multivolume files. However, it cannot be located on a pack that contains one of the offline volumes of a multivolume file. The pack containing the work file must remain online while the job is run. The work file must be RETAIN-S. If RETAIN-T or RETAIN-P is specified, the system forces it to RETAIN-S.

For small indexed files of 10 tracks or less where the sort time is negliglible, a work file will not improve performance and should not be used.

To use this performance option, no change is needed to your source program. Also, programs need not be recompiled to use this option; only the additional OCL FILE statement is needed.

MULTIVOLUME FILES

File Statements for Multivolume Files

If a file is too large for one disk, you can continue it on one or more subsequent disks. Such files are called multivolume files. (A volume is one disk.) Multivolume files can be online or offline. A file is online if all volumes are mounted when the job begins. The UNIT and PACK parameters are equal. An offline file has fewer UNIT parameters (shares same unit).

Creation

The ways that you can create a multivolume file depend on the type of file you are creating. For a sequential and indexed file, the records are stored in consecutive locations on disk, in the order that they are read. One disk is filled at a time.

For sequential files, each volume must be filled before the next volume is loaded. For indexed files, each volume need not be filled. Each indexed volume is loaded until a key field is reached that is higher than the HIKEY for that volume, then the next volume is loaded. Indexed files must be loaded in key field sequence. A halt occurs if a volume is filled and there is not a record with a key field equal to the HIKEY for that volume. For example, suppose the HIKEY for a volume is 199. You load a record with the key field 195. It is less than the HIKEY, so it is loaded on the volume. Next, you load a record with the key field 200. Record 200 would be loaded on the next volume, and a halt would occur. The reason for the halt is that you did not load a key field record equal to 199 before you jumped to a new volume. This halt can be ignored. You can load the next volume and at some future time insert a key field record equal to the HIKEY. To insert a record after the loading sequence has passed, a random add must be done.

Indexed and sequential files may be either online or offline.

If using removable disks when creating sequential or indexed files you can mount a disk, wait until the system indicates it is filled, then, mount the next disk. If you have two drives, you can mount the two disks, wait until the first one is filled, then replace it with the third while your program fills the second disk. In either case, you cannot use more than 40 disks per job.

Space can be allocated on all volumes of a multivolume file if the volumes are online at the time of the allocation. Space can also be allocated for an offline file, other than the initial volume, but the packs must be empty packs or space (TRACKS and LOCATION) known to be available. You can use both fixed and removable disks with any online multivolume file. Space for a volume of a multivolume file will be reserved after one or more records are placed in that volume.

Direct files must be online. Direct files are created in a non-consecutive manner. When creating such files, you are required to mount all the disks on your disk unit at the same time. The maximum number of 5444 disks you could use, therefore, is two if you have only one drive, or three or four if you have two drives. The maximum number of 5445 disks is one if you have one drive, or two if you have two drives.

Processing

The ways in which you can process multivolume files depend on the method your program uses to get records from the file. If records are read from a sequential or indexed file, you can mount a disk, wait until all of the records have been read from the disk, then mount the next disk. If you have two drives, you can mount two disks, wait until all of the records have been read from the first disk, then replace that disk with the third while your program reads from the second disk. When you are processing files offline the disks must be removable. When online, any combination of fixed and removable disks is acceptable, but all must be mounted and must remain mounted. **OCL** Considerations

When a file consists of more than one volume, the FILE statement parameters require different coding.

Multivolume Disk Files

The FILE statement for multivolume disk files requires that you define and code-additional parameters for these keywords: PACK, UNIT, TRACKS, RECORDS, and LOCATION.

These additional parameters are necessary for two reasons:

- When processing disk files contained on more than a single volume, the system requires information about each volume in order to perform all the protection and checking functions necessary.
- 2. Additional information is needed to determine and check the sequence in which the volumes are processed and when they are to be mounted on the disk drives.

The rules for coding a list of data or codes after a keyword are as follows:

- 1. The list must be enclosed by apostrophes.
- The items in the list must be separated by commas. No blanks are allowed within or between items.

Figure 20 shows an example of lists in parameters. The file is online.

The PACK parameter requires a list. The UNIT parameter may require a list while LOCATION, TRACKS, HIKEY, and RECORDS require a list if they are stated. The considerations for using the lists in these parameters are included in the parameter discussions following. The functions of the parameters are explained under *Disk FILE Statement*. (Parameters not mentioned here are used as explained under *Disk FILE Statement*.)



Figure 20. FILE Statement for a Disk Multivolume File

FILE STATEMENT PARAMETER CONSIDERATIONS FOR MULTIVOLUME DISK FILES

ΡΑСΚ	The names of the disks that contain or will follow the keyword PACK. (PACK names ing.)	
	When a multivolume file is created, the system disks to indicate the order of the disks. Th which you list their names in the PACK par	e disks are numbered in the order in
	When a multivolume file is processed the sy that the disks are used in the proper order.	rstem provides two checks to ensure
	1. It checks to ensure that the disks are are listed in the PACK parameter.	used in the order that their names
	2. It checks the sequence numbers of th secutive and in ascending order (01, 0	-
	The system stops when it detects a disk that can do one of three things:	t is out of sequence. The operator
	1. Mount the proper disk and restart the	e system.
	2. Restart the system and process the di is ascending (for consecutive input ar	
	3. End the program.	
	Consecutive input or update sequence num created as multivolume. If the file is multiv is ascending but not consecutive, a diagnost proceed option.	volume created and the sequence
	The following is an example of the PACK p file that is contained on three disks, named	
	1 4 8 12 16 20 24 // F/LE WAME MVF/LE, UN/T-/	28 32 38 49 44 48 R1 1 PACK- / VOL11, VOL2, VOL3 *
UNIT	The keyword UNIT must be followed by a on the disk unit that contains or will conta be repeated. The codes are as follows: <i>Codes</i>	
	R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
	F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
	R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
	F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
	D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
	D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

FILE STATEMENT PARAMETER CONSIDERATIONS FOR MULTIVOLUME DISK FILES (continued)

The order of codes in the UNIT parameter must correspond to the order of names in the PACK parameter.

A multivolume file must not have one volume on a 5444 disk drive and another volume on a 5445 disk drive. All volumes of a file must be on the same type of disk drive.

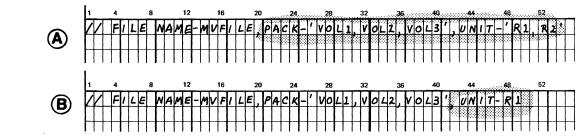
When you are creating or processing a sequential or indexed file, you can use the same drive for more than one of the disks, however, the disks must then all be removable disks. If you do, you must not repeat the code for the drive in the UNIT parameter. When the number of codes in the UNIT parameter is less than the number of names in the PACK parameter, the system uses the codes alternately.

For the 5445 the UNIT parameter can have a maximum of two unit codes. When two unit codes are given, the volumes must be mounted alternately in the order indicated by the unit codes. If all the volumes are to be mounted on the same drive, you specify only one unit code.

If any fixed unit, F1 or F2, is specified, the file must be online multivolume. Assume that your program processes an offline file consecutively. Further assume the following:

- The disks containing the file are named VOL1, VOL2, and VOL3, respectively.
- You intend to mount VOL1 and VOL3 on 5444 drive one, and VOL2 on 5444 drive two.

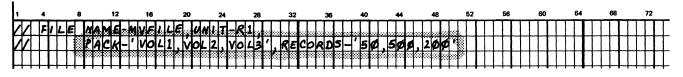
In the following examples, line A shows the PACK and UNIT parameters for the file. If all three disks were used on 5444 drive one, the UNIT parameter in line B would have been used.



 TRACKS or RECORDS
 A keyword, TRACKS or RECORDS, must be followed by numbers that indicate the amount of space needed on each of the disks that will contain the multivolume file. TRACKS or RECORDS must be specified. Any multivolume file load requires a TRACKS or RECORDS parameter whether the file previously existed or not. The order of these numbers must correspond to the order of the names in the PACK parameter. For example, assume the following:

- Your program is creating a sequential (offline) file on three disks: VOL1, VOL2, and VOL3.
- The first 50 records are to be placed on VOL1, the next 500 on VOL2, and the last 200 on VOL3.

The PACK and RECORDS parameters for the file are:



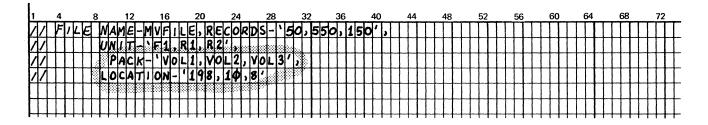
FILE STATEMENT PARAMETER CONSIDERATIONS FOR MULTIVOLUME DISK FILES (continued)

LOCATION

The keyword LOCATION must be followed by the numbers of the tracks on which the file is to begin on each of the disks you use for the file. The order of the numbers must correspond to the order of the names in the PACK parameter. For example, assume the following:

- The disks containing the file are: VOL1, VOL2, and VOL3.
- The tracks on which the file is to begin on each disk are: track 198 in VOL1, track10 in VOL2, and track 8 in VOL3.

The PACK and LOCATION parameters for the file are shown in the following example. If you omit the LOCATION parameter, the system chooses the beginning track on each of the disks. If LOCATION is specified for one disk, it must be specified for all disks. If the multivolume file exists, LOCATION must be given for all disks and must be identical to the LOCATION parameters specified when the file was created.



RETAIN

HIKEY

RETAIN-S must not be specified unless the file is online multivolume. If RETAIN-S is used for online multivolume, it cannot be changed to RETAIN-T unless also done online.

The HIKEY parameter is used only for multivolume indexed files. HIKEY limits the highest keyfield that can be put on each pack of a multivolume file. The following example contains an example of a HIKEY parameter list using the file used in example A under *Unit*. In this case the three volumes contain lists of names. The highest keyfield allowed on the first volume is JONES. This means that all the records beginning with A and including JONES will be processed on this volume. Since HIKEY parameters must be in ascending order, the next volume should contain all of the records with names following JONES and including NICHOL. The last volume will contain all the records with names that come after NICHOL.

1	1	4			8				12	2			16	3			2	0			2	4			2	в			3	2			3	6			4	0			4	14			2	48				52	2			56	;		60)			64	4			6	8			- 7	72			
	1	E	T +	E		N	A	M	E			L)	ŀ	1	4	á		1	11	d		ç -		1	3			2	2		,	P	Ak		ĸ	-	1	V	0	ц.	4	,	V	0	L	2	,	۷	0	L	3	ľ	1		Γ					Ι		Τ	T	T	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Π	
Ŀ	1	H.	ZK	É	Y	-	1	J	0	N	E	S		,	٨	1	1	:	-	2	- ,	2	Z		212	1	ZZ	P	2		1	T	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Т	Τ	Τ	Τ		Τ										Γ					Γ				Τ	Τ	Τ	T	T	T	Τ		Τ	T	Τ		•
							8															Ŧ				T	Ŧ	8	Ŧ	8	T		T	T		T	T	T		T												Γ					Γ			T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T		T	T			
																Ι			Τ	Ι	I			T	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ		T	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	T		T												Γ					Γ	Γ		T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T		T			
										Γ	Γ		T	ſ			ſ	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T		T	T	T	T												Γ				Γ	Γ		Γ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	T	T	T	T	T	T	T			-

FILE STATEMENT PARAMETER CONSIDERATIONS FOR MULTIVOLUME DISK FILES (continued)

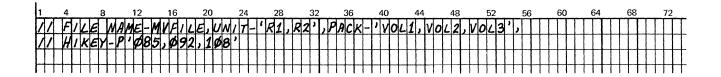
OCL considerations for the HIKEY parameter are:

- 1. All characters except commas are valid.
- 2. The list of HIKEY parameters must begin and end with an apostrophe even if only one parameter is specified. A single apostrophe in a key field must be written as a double apostrophe in the HIKEY parameter.
- 3. For each PACK parameter specified, there must be a corresponding HIKEY keyfield parameter for that pack.
- 4. The HIKEY fields must be equal in length and must be specified in ascending order.
- 5. The maximum length of a HIKEY field is 29 characters.
- 6. The HIKEY fields must be the same length as the keys on file.
- 7. Continuation of HIKEY sublists must begin in column 4 of the continuation card, following the // blank.
- Comments must not follow the last comma on a file statement where the last parameter is an incomplete HIKEY sublist.

Packed HIKEY: The packed HIKEY parameter has all the OCL considerations for HIKEY including the following restrictions:

- 1. The first character following the HIKEY keyword and dash (HIKEY-) must be a P to indicate packed HIKEY.
- 2. All characters in the packed HIKEY must be zoned numerics (0-9).
- 3. The number of digits in each packed key must be the same.
- 4. The number of zoned numeric characters per packed HIKEY must not exceed 15, since the maximum packed key field length is 8.

The following example shows a packed HIKEY parameter. In the example the key field length of MVFILE is 2. The HIKEYs are X'085F', X'092F', and X'108F' for VOL1, VOL2, and VOL3 respectively. The first two packed keys required a leading zero to make the lengths consistent.



Multivolume Tape Files

The FILE statement for processing multivolume tape files requires that you define and code the UNIT and REEL parameters differently than you would for single volume files. There are two reasons for this:

- When processing tape files contained on more than a single volume, the system requires information about each volume in order to perform all the checking and protection functions necessary.
- 2. Additional information is needed to determine and check the sequence in which the volumes are processed and when they are to be mounted on the tape drives.

When an end of volume condition is reached on a multivolume file, that volume will rewind to load point and unload. The message 'EOV Tn' will be printed if LOG is on (where n = 1, 2, 3 or 4). If the drive that is to contain the next volume (whether the same drive or another drive), is not in a ready condition, the system will come to I/O attention. Processing continues when the drive which is to contain the next volume is made ready. If you are using alternating drives, and the next volume is mounted and the drive is ready when end of volume is reached, the message is printed and processing continues without stopping.

For multivolume tape files, the UNIT and REEL parameters of the FILE statement may require a list of codes. When coding a list of codes, the following rules must be followed:

- 1. The list must be enclosed by apostrophes.
- 2. The items in the list must be separated by commas.
- 3. Nine and seven track units cannot be intermixed.

The considerations for coding multivolume parameters are included in the following parameter discussions. The functions of the parameters are explained under *Tape File Statement*. Parameters not mentioned here are used as explained under *Tape File Statement*.

FILE STATEMENT PARAMETER CONSIDERATIONS FOR MULTIVOLUME TAPE FILES

REEL

The names of the tapes that contain or will contain the multivolume file must follow the keyword REEL (40 names maximum). If the input tapes are not labeled or contain non-standard tape labels, the REEL parameter must be coded REEL-'NL,n' or REEL-'NS,n', where n is the number of volumes in the file (99 volumes maximum). For output files, the n in REEL-'NL,n' is ignored.

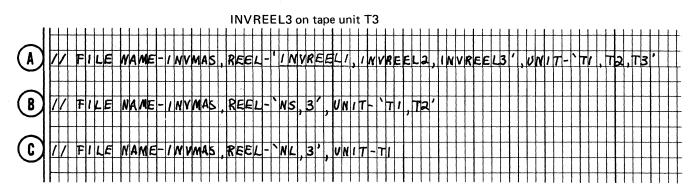
UNIT

The keyword unit must be followed by a code or codes indicating the location of the tape unit that contains or will contain the file. No UNIT parameter may be repeated. The order of codes in the UNIT parameter must correspond to the order of names in the REEL parameter. When the number of codes in the UNIT parameter is less than the number of codes in the REEL parameter, the units are used alternately.

In the following examples, line A shows a tape multivolume file consisting of three reels. The volumes must be mounted as follows:

INVREEL1 on tape unit T1

INVREEL2 on tape unit T2



Line B shows a three-volume file with non-standard tape labels. The volumes must be mounted as follows:

First volume on tape unit T1

Second volume on tape unit T2

Third volume on tape unit T1

Line C shows a three-volume file with unlabeled reels. The volumes must be mounted in sequence on tape unit T1.

SPLIT CYLINDER FILES

To use split cylinder file support, two parameters (SPLIT and LOCATION) are specified on the FILE statement. The SPLIT parameter specifies the size of each split cylinder file. It can also be used to specify the size of the group of split cylinder files you want on disk. The LOCATION parameter determines where on the 5445 disk each split cylinder file can be found. For further discussion of split cylinder file concepts, see *IBM System/3 Disk Concepts and Planning Guide*, GC21-7571.

Restrictions for Using Split Cylinder Files

- 1. Split cylinder files can only be direct or sequential files and cannot be multivolume files
- 2. Split cylinder files can only be used with the 5445 disk and not the 5444 disk.
- 3. TRACKS or RECORDS parameters must not be specified.
- 4. Labels must be unique. Therefore, the DATE parameter is used only to further qualify the split cylinder file. The file date is always the current system date for the job.
- 5. When processing the file, the block length cannot be longer than the space available on one cylinder of a split cylinder file.

Creating the First Split Cylinder File in a Group

The SPLIT parameter is required when creating the first split cylinder file in a group of split cylinder files. The LOCATION parameter is optional.

The SPLIT parameter entries are:

SPLIT-tracks per cylinder/number of cylinders

The tracks per cylinder entry specifies the amount of space needed on each cylinder for the first split cylinder file. The cylinders entry shows the number of cylinders needed for the whole group of split cylinder files to be specified.

The LOCATION parameter is optional since the system will find a starting location for the split file group. However, if you want to specify a particular cylinder, you may.

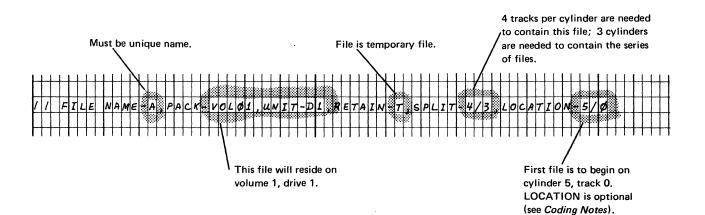
The LOCATION entries are:

LOCATION-cylinder number/track number

The split cylinder file group must always start at track 0. Since 0 will always be the entry for track, you can omit it from the LOCATION parameter and use:

LOCATION-cylinder number

File Statement Example: First Split Cylinder File in a Group



Coding Notes:

- 1. On the SPLIT parameter, tracks per cylinder, must be 1-19 and the number of cylinders specified must be 1-199.
- 2. On the LOCATION parameter, the cylinder number must be 1-199 and the track number, if specified, must be 0.
- 3. LOCATION-5 could be the location entry in this example since track 0, the required track entry, need not be specified. The LOCATION parameter itself is optional.

Creating Other Split Cylinder Files

To create the rest of the split cylinder files in a group both the SPLIT and LOCATION parameters are required. The SPLIT parameter must be in the format:

SPLIT-tracks per cylinder

This entry, tracks per cylinder, indicates the number of tracks needed on each cylinder for the file specified.

The LOCATION parameter must be the filename of either the first split cylinder file in the group or any other split cylinder file in the group that was created in a previous job.

LOCATION-filename

File Statement Example: Other Split Cylinder Files

Coding Notes:

- 1. On the SPLIT parameter, tracks per cylinder must be 1-19.
- 2. On the LOCATION parameter, the filename must be the name of a temporary or permanent split cylinder file in the same group.

Accessing Existing Split Cylinder Files

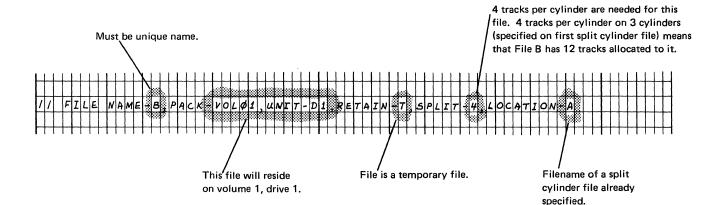
To access existing split cylinder files, the SPLIT and LOCATION parameters are not required. Their use would only be needed to further qualify the file being accessed.

Loading to Existing Split Cylinder Files

To load to existing split cylinder files, the SPLIT parameter is required and the LOCATION may be required or optional. The SPLIT parameter specified for loading must agree with the SPLIT parameter of the existing split cylinder file. If the format of the SPLIT parameter is *tracks per cylinder/cylinders*, the LOCATION parameter is required and must match the cylinder number/track number of the existing split cylinder file. If the format of the SPLIT parameter is *tracks per cylinder*, the LOCATION parameter is optional.

Scratch Split Cylinder Files

Split cylinder files may be created as temporary or permanent files and in subsequent jobs made scratch files. However, the scratch files remain on the 5445 disk only until the area is needed for the allocation of a new file. Then, the scratch split cylinder file is deleted. If you have scratched split cylinder files and you want to make sure they are not deleted, you may reactivate them to temporary files by using a RETAIN-A on the FILE statement.



AUTOMATIC DISK FILE ALLOCATION

You can allocate disk space for a file by determining the size of the file and the location of an available number of tracks that can contain that file. (If you have planned the location of your files, you know where files are located and the tracks that are available for further allocation. The Disk File Layout Chart, GX21-9108, is available to document your file locations.) After you have determined where to place your file, you can code the LOCATION parameter of the FILE statement to tell disk system management on which track the file is to begin. Figure 21, part A, is a sample FILE statement containing a LOCATION parameter to tell disk system management that FILEA is to be located on disk VOL1 beginning on track 10.

If, as in Figure 21, part B, no LOCATION parameter is coded, FILEA is located on the disk pack automatically for you. The process used by disk system management to allocate file space for you is known as *automatic file allocation*.

COMPILING A SOURCE PROGRAM AND STORING IT IN AN OBJECT LIBRARY

The COMPILE OCL statement tells disk system management to:

- Compile a source program from a source library and store the object program in an object library, or
- 2. Compile a source program from cards and store the object in an object library.

The format of the COMPILE statement looks like this:

// COMPILE SOURCE-name, UNIT-
$$\begin{cases} R1\\ F1\\ R2\\ F2 \end{cases}$$
, OBJECT-
$$\begin{cases} R1\\ F1\\ R2\\ F2 \end{cases}$$

The SOURCE keyword parameter is used if the source program is located in a source library. You must supply the same name given to the source program when it was stored in the library by the Library Maintenance program. The UNIT parameter must be used with the SOURCE parameter to identify the disk location of the source program to be compiled.

If the SOURCE keyword parameter is not used, the source program is assumed to be on cards following the RUN statement in the job stream.

The OBJECT keyword parameter tells the system where the disk which will contain the object program is located. If the source program is on cards, the OBJECT keyword parameter is the only parameter which can be specified. If the OBJECT keyword parameter is omitted in either case, the object program is placed on the same disk pack as the compiler.

For example, for RPG II programs, the name assigned to the object program in the object library is the name you assigned in the Program Identification (columns 75-80) in the RPG II Control Card. If you did not assign a name in these columns, RPGOBJ is assumed.

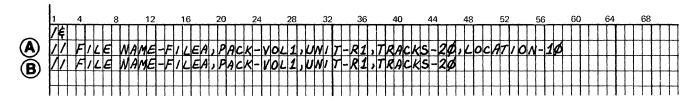
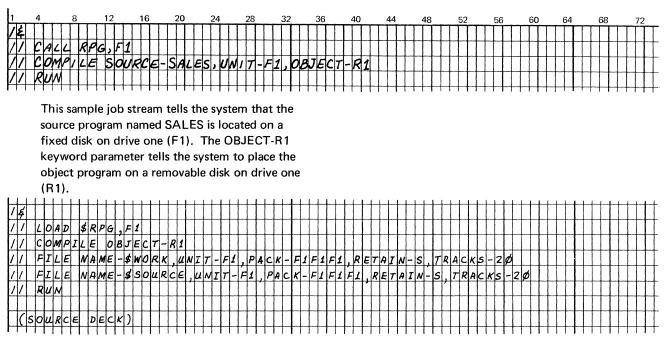


Figure 21. File Statement and Use of the LOCATION Parameter

Sample Statements



This sample job stream compiles a source program on cards and stores it in an object library on R1. If the OBJECT parameter was not coded, the program would be compiled and placed into the same object library as the compiler (F1).

LOADING PROGRAMS IN A DPF ENVIRON-MENT

A program can be loaded into either program level first. You tell the supervisor which system input device contains the job streams for the programs by selecting the device on the Dual Program Control Switch. (Refer to the *IBM System/3 Disk System Operator's Guide*, GC21-7508 for further operating procedures.) When preparing your job streams, you should be aware of the following OCL considerations:

OCL CONSIDERATIONS FOR LOADING PROGRAMS IN A DPF ENVIRONMENT

DATE statement	The DATE statement you use as an IPL statement to set the system date must be supplied with the first program loaded in one program level. The DATE statement must precede the set of statements for the first program. In the device associated with the other program level, a DATE statement must not precede the sets of statements for the programs being run in that level.
	A DATE statement that temporarily changes the system date can be used within the set of OCL statements for programs in either program level. This DATE statement applies only to the program for which it is used.
LOG statement	LOG statements can be placed anywhere among the statements in either job stream. There are, however, certain restrictions on their use.
	 Only LOG statements for program level 1 can tell the system to use a dif- ferent logging device. Only ON or OFF can be specified in program level 2. The device used for level 1 is also used for level 2.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS FOR LOADING PROGRAMS IN A DPF ENVIRONMENT (continued)

- LOG must be on for both program levels before logging can occur. If a LOG statement for either program level stops the logging function, logging is stopped for both levels. The program level that turned the logging device off must turn it back on before logging can resume. If both levels specify OFF, then both program levels must turn the logging device back on before logging can resume.
- When the printer is the logging device, OCL statements and message codes are not printed if the program in either level uses the printer as an output device.

The following example shows sample LOG statements in a job stream:

1	4	1	8		12			1	6		20		24			:	28		3	2		
M	10	G	PR	1	VT	E	R						Τ	Τ		Π			Τ	Г	Γ	T
Λ	10	AD	ρ	R	96	1		F	1				Τ	Γ	Γ	Π		Τ	T	Г	Γ	T
N	RU	M												Γ		Π				Г	Γ	T
11	10	G	PF	F										Γ						Γ	Γ	Ī
11	10	AD	P	R	06	2	,	F	1													I
Δ	RU	M																		Γ		I
N	40	GK	2											Ι								I
\square																						

Note: The first LOG statement indicates that the printer is used as the logging device while program PROG1 is being run. OCL statements and error messages are not printed for program PROG2 because of the second LOG statement. The third LOG statement causes the logging device to be used again.

- **NOHALT statement** The NOHALT statement is ignored for program level 2. The program in this level always stops after each job.
- HALT statement The HALT statement is ignored by program level 2.

IMAGE statementThe IMAGE statement is invalid and the job cannot be run, if the other level has
the printer allocated to it.

FORMS statementThe FORMS statement is invalid and the job cannot be run, if the other level has
the printer allocated to it.

LOAD statement The LOAD* statement cannot be used in program level 2.

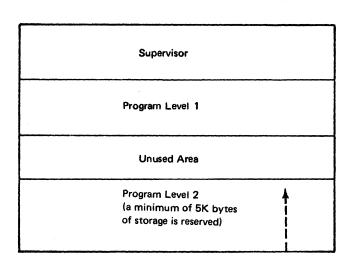
- LOCKOUT statement The LOCKOUT statement is used only on a DPF system. It is used to suspend the other program level to allow faster job initiation in the program level in which it is entered.
- **PARTITION statement** The PARTITION statement is used only on a DPF system. It is used to guarantee a minimum size to level 2 for a subsequent program in that level.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS FOR LOADING PROGRAMS IN A DPF ENVIRONMENT (continued)

	Supervisor
	Program Level 1
	Unused Area
▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲ ▲	Storage needed for Program Level 2 (a minimum of 5K bytes for systems with 16K bytes or more of main storage.

Without a PARTITION Statement

If level 1 is not using the storage and a program is loaded into level 2, it is assigned the number of bytes requested by program attributes or a minimum of 5K bytes for systems with 16K bytes or more of main storage. When the program in level 2 comes to end of job, the storage for level 2 is no longer reserved and level 1 can use it.



With a PARTITION Statement

If a PARTITION statement is used, the assigned storage can only be used by the program in level 2. It is reserved. Even when the program in level 2 comes to end of job that storage is reserved for future programs in level 2.

If you do not use a PARTITION statement and, therefore, do not indicate the minimum size of program level 2, the system automatically assigns, during execution, the storage needed to level 2 or a minimum of 5K bytes for systems with 16K bytes or more of main storage. You cannot submit a PARTITION statement in program level 2 or when program level 2 is processing. In a procedure the PARTITION statement must follow the LOAD statement and precede the RUN statement.

The format of the PARTITION statement is:

// PARTITION size

You must state the minimum number of bytes of storage you want to save for program level 2. The number must be equal to or greater than 5120. The amount of storage you specify is rounded to the next highest 256 byte increment by the supervisor, if it is not a multiple of 256.

DPF Considerations for 12K Systems

All programs require 5K bytes of storage for initiation and termination even though a program may occupy less than 5K. System programs use this storage for performing system functions just prior to loading the user's object program (initiation) and again immediately following the end of object program execution (termination).

This 5K requirement also affects DPF. For independent initiation and termination of a program on a DPF system, at least 5K bytes of storage must be available for each program level, regardless of the size of the program to be executed. If a program needs less than 5K while another program requires the remaining storage which is 5K or larger, the smaller program must be initiated first so that the storage required by the system for initiation will be available. The system can then use all the storage not required by the smaller program for the larger program. However, the smaller program must wait for termination of the larger program, so that 5K is available for the smaller program's termination.

In a 12K DPF system only limited independent initiation and termination is allowed. With a 4K minimum size requirement for the supervisor only 8K is available for user programs. Independent program initiation and termination for each program is possible if each program being run occupies 3K or less of storage. The remaining 2K of storage is used alternately by either program to satisfy the 5K system requirement. If one program needs more than 3K, the smaller program must be initiated first and can have a maximum executing size of 3K. The larger program is then initiated and can occupy the remaining storage. The larger program level must be terminated before the smaller program level.

Sample Job Streams

Suppose you had four jobs to be run requiring the I/O shown in Figure 22, Jobs 1 and 2 and Jobs 3 and 4 can be run together, because they do not require the same I/O devices. If Job 2 finishes before Job 1, you could run Job 4 because Jobs 1 and 4 do not require the same devices. If, on the other hand, Job 1 finishes first, Job 3 could not be run with Job 2, because both jobs require the printer for output.

Figure 23 shows the job streams required to load the four jobs. Assume the system has the minimum system configuration plus the 5471 Printer-Keyboard and dual drives. The Dual Program Switch indicates from which device OCL statements are read. MFCU refers to hopper 1. At system generation time P-KB was assigned to the 5471 Printer-keyboard.

	JOB1	JOB3
	An inquiry program that:	A stock status report that:
Program Level 1	 Reads printer- keyboard. 	 Reads disk. Prints.
	• Reads disk.	• Prints.
	 Writes printer- keyboard. 	
	JOB2	JOB4
	An inventory updating program	A detail punching job that:
	that:	
Program Level 2	 Reads cards. 	 Reads cards.
	 Reads disk. 	• Punches cards.
	 Updates disk. 	
	• Prints.	

Figure 22. Job Scheduling for DPF

1 4 8 12 16	20 24 28	32 36 40 44	48 52	56 60	64 68 72	76 80	84 88 92
X SET DUAL PROGRAM			1 X				
* PRESS INTERRUPT K	EY AND KEY I	N OCL FROM PR	INTER-KEYB	OARD			
11 DATE \$7-25-70	SET SYSTEM	DATE					
1/ PARTITION 5120	SET ASIDE 5	K FOR LEVEL 2					
// LOAD /WOPGM, FI	LOAD INGUIR	Y PROGRAM					
11 FILE WAME-MSTART	UNIT-FZ. PAC	K-FIXED 2					
V/ LOG CONSOLE	USE PRIMTER	-KEYBOARD AS	LOGGING DE	VICE			
VIRUM JOB1							
						┟╎╎╎╏╎╎┛┛	┼┼╉┼┼┦┦┼╿┨╿┦
	╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┟┠╷╷	┨┼┼┼┠┼┼┟┠╷╷╽┨	╷╷╷╻╷╷╻╷	┽╋┽┽╃┫┽┼	↓↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓	┝┼┼┼╂┼┼┦╏┤	┼┼╋┼┼┼╋┼┼┼┫╿┼
X SET DUAL PROGRAM		CU FOR LEVEL2	*	╶┼╂┼┼┼╂┤┼	↓┃ ↓↓↓↓↓↓	╞┼┼┼╂┽┼╀╂┥	┼┼╉┼┼┽┫┽┼┼┫┦┼
* CARDS IN HOPPER1	×	╶╋┽┽┽╃┽┽┽┠┼┼╿╏	╵┤╽╎╏╎╎╏╎	╶┼╂┼┼╎╂┼┼	↓┃ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓	┟┼┼┼┠┼┼┠╏	┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼
* PRESS INTERROPT K	EV 😽	╶╉┼┼┼╃┽┽┽╉┼┼┼╉	┝╅┫┽┫┥┥		↓┃ ↓↓↓↓↓↓↓	┝┼┼┼╉┼┽╂╏	┼┼╂╎┼╎╂╎┼┟┨╎┼
┝╅╡┼╉┼┽┽╉┼╪┼╋┽┽┼╋┥┼┥	<u>_<u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u><u></u></u>	╶╉┼┼┼╃┽┽┽╂┊┼┤┨	╺┽┽┽┫┽┽┽┥┩	┼╂┼┼┼┠┼┼	┤┨ ┽┼┼ <mark>┟</mark> ┽┽┽	┝┼┼┽╉┽┽┦╋┥	<u> </u>
1/ LOAD UPDATE, F1	LOAD TO UPD	ATE MASTER IN	VENTORY FI	(E	↓↓ ↓↓↓↓↓↓↓	┟┽┼┼┠┼┼┼┠┤	<u> </u>
11 FILE WAME-INVEN,	UNIT-R1, PACK	-MASTER					
1/ DATE \$7-26-78		EM DATE TEMPO		╌┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼	┼╋┼┼┼╉┼┼┼	┝┽┽┽╉┽╃┽╋┿	┼┼┠┼┼┼┠╎┼┠┠┼┼
11 LOG DM	CONSOLE USE	I FOR LOGSING	IN BOTH L	EVELS	┼┛┽┼┼┨┽┼┼		<u>-+++++++++++++</u>
1/ RUN JOB2	╶╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼				┶┻┵┼┵┹┹┵┼┙		
data	++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++	╶╉┽┽┽┠┽┽┽┠┊┽┟╂		-++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++	┼┹┼┼┼╉┼┼┼	┝┼┼┼╂╂┼┼╂╂	┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼
/ #	╶╂┽┼┽╂┼┼┼╂┼┼	╶┛╵┼┼┛╎┼┥┥┥					┼┼╃╎┼╎┫╎╿╎┨╎┼
					┟┫╎╎╎┠┼┼┼	┝┼┼┼╂┼┵╂┼	┼┼┠┼┼┼┠┼┼┼┠┼┼
* WHEN EJ DISPLAYED	FOR LEVEL1,	PRESS HALT/RE	SET 🛪	╶┼╉┼┼╎┦┦┼┼	┼┨ ┼┼╎ <mark>╎</mark> ╎┤	┝┼┽┽╉┽┽┿╉┽	╷╷┫╎╷┥┫┥┥┥┥┥
		╶╉┼┊┙┛┊╴┥╴┥┥┥┥			↓┃ ↓↓↓↓↓↓↓	┝┼┼╀╂┼┼╀╂┼	┼┽┠┼┽┽╂┼┼┊╂┼ ┶
11 LOAD STKSTA.F1	LOAD STOCK	STATUS OCL FR	OM PRINTER	- NEYBOARI	×↓↓↓↓↓↓↓	└┼┼┦╂┤┦┤┠┤	┼┼╊┼┼┼╉╎┼┥┠┽┼
1/ FILE MAME-MSTPR	T, UNIT-FZ, PA	CK-FIXED2			┶╉┽┽┽╉┽┽┽	┝┼╁╎┠╎╷╷╷	┼┼╏┼┼╎┠┼┼┟┼
// LOG OFF MO // RUN JOB3	LOGGING OCC	URS, UNTIL AMO	THER LOG-O	N IN LEVE	LI IS REA	D	<u>↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓↓</u>
// RUN JOB3	╶╉┽┽┽╉┼┟┼╉┼╁	╶┫┼┼┼┫┼┾┽┨┼┼┤┫			╷╻╷╷╷╷╷╷╷		┤┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼┼┼
∕∉	╉┼┽┽╋┽┾┽┨┽┼	╶╉┼┽┼╉┼┼┽╉┼┼┽╉	╶┥┥┥┫┥┥	╶┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼	┟┫┽┼┼╉┼┽┼	┝┽┼┼╂┼┼╂┼	┤┼┠╎┼╎┠╎╎┠ ╎
╺┽┼┼╉┼┼┽╂┥┼┼┠┥┽┼┛┙┼┥	┨┥┽┥┫┼┼╎┨╎┼	┨┼┼┽╉┼┽┽┨┼┼┼┨	╶┥┽┽╉┽┦┟╋┽┥		┟┻╃┽┽┹╉╄┿┾╡	┝╁╁┼╂╂╁╁╁╉┦	┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼
╈╪╪╬╋╪╎┤┲╋╪╴┶╎╷╏╗╴┾╴┥┥┥	╶┨╎┥╎┛╎╛╎┨╎┤	╉┼┽┽╂┼┽╂┊┼┽┨	└┼┼┽╉┼┼┟╂┼┤	╶┼╂┼┼┤╂ ╎┼	┼╋┼┼┼╂┼┼┼┥	┝┼┼┼╉╃┼┼╋╉	╷╷╻╷╷╷╷╷╷
		RESS HALT/RES	ET *	╶┼╂┼┼┼┠┼┼	┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼┤	┝┽┼┼╂┼┼┼┨┦	<u>┼┼╂┼┼┽╂┽┼┼╂╀┼</u>
* CARDS IN HOPPER 1	*	╉┼┼╎╂╎┼╂╂┼┼╀╂	╶┼┼┼╉┼┼╃┼┤	╶┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼	┼╊┼┼┽┠┼┥┼┥	┝┼┼┼╂┼	┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼
┝┽┵┼┟┽╘┽┨┥╛╛╎╎┼┼╄╷┼┼	┨┥┥┥┫┥┥	╶╂┼ <u>┥┼</u> ┥┥┽╿┼┼┤┨	┽┽┽╉┽┽┥╉┼╢	╶┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼	┟╋┼┼┼╂┼┼╂┤	┝┽╪┿╉┿┽╂╋┽	<u>┽┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼</u> ┟ <u></u> ┟┼
// LOAD DETPCH, F1 // RUN JOB4	LOAD OCL FO	R JOB4 FROM M	FCU	╶┼╂┼╎┼╂┽┿	┼╋┼┼┼╂┼┼┞┤	┝┼┼┼╂┼┼┾╂┼	┼┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼┼ ┨┥┼
1/ RUN JOB4	╉┼┼┼╂┼┼╂┼┼	╶╂┼┼┼╉┼┼╃╉┼╡┼╉	╶┽┼┼╂┽┼┼┠┾┦	╌┼╂┼┼┼╂┼┼	┼╊┼┼┼╂┼┼┼┤	┝┼┼┼╂┼┾┼╂┼	┽┼╊┼┼╀╊┼┘┽╉┽┼
79	╋┽┽┽╉┼┼┼╋┽┿	╶╂┼┼┼╂┾┼┼╂┼┾┼╂	╶┼┼╎╂┼╎╂┼┤	╶┽╊┼┼┼╂┼┼	┼╋┽┼┼╂┼┼┼	┝┼┼┼╉╀┼┼╊┼	┽┼╋┼┼┽╉┼╵┽╉┽┼
/€	╊┼┼┼╉┾┼┼╉┼┾╴	╶╂┼┼┼┠┼┼┞┠	┽┼┼╂┼╎┼╂┼┤	╶┼╉┼╎┼╉┤┼	┼╉┼┼┼╉┾┼┼┤	┝┼┼┼╉┼┼┽╉┼	┽┼╂┼┼╂┼╴┽╂┼┼
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••••••••		11111111			

Figure 23. Sample Job Stream

RESTARTING A CHECKPOINTED PROGRAM

Checkpoint is a means of recording the status of a problem program at desired intervals. Restart is a means of resuming the execution of the program from the last checkpoint rather than from the beginning, if processing is terminated for any reason (with the exception of a controlled cancel) before the normal end of job. For example, a power failure may occur and cause an interruption.

Programming Considerations

- Checkpoint/Restart enables the user to restart a checkpointed program from the last checkpoint taken provided no intervening program executions have taken place.
- Sufficient disk space is allocated by Library Maintenance on a checkpoint system pack (5444) at System Generation or Library Maintenance time to allow one active checkpoint. On a system with Checkpoint and Inquiry, the disk space will be used by both functions. The checkpoint program cannot be an inquiry evoking program since the disk space is used by both facilities.
- Checkpoint requests are accepted only in program level 1. Checkpointed programs must be restarted in program level 1. If program level 2 is used to execute a checkpointed program, the checkpoint requests are ignored.

Restart Procedure

To restart the interrupted job at the last checkpoint, submit the following OCL statements:

// LOAD \$\$RSTR, unit // RUN

The unit in this example is a pack with module \$RSTR. If an IPL occurs it must be from the pack with the active checkpoint.

If an intervening program is run, an IPL must occur and be from a pack other than the pack that contains the active checkpoint. Programs executed under control of the new IPL system must not access disk volumes used in the active checkpointed program or modify the object library where the checkpointed program resides.

Other OCL statements that may be required are the PARTITION and LOG statements.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS FOR	R USING CHECKPOINT/RESTART	
PARTITION statement	A PARTITION statement may be required at restart to guarantee the required minimum level 2 size. See <i>Loading Programs in a</i> <i>DPF Environment</i> for further information on the PARTITION statement.	
	 A halt will occur if restart is attempted without sufficient space in program level 1. An immediate cancel is taken. 	
	 Checkpoints can only be taken in program level 1. To restart a checkpointed program, program level 1 must be used. If level 2 is used to execute a checkpointed program, the checkpoint requests are ignored. 	
	 Restart requires 5K of storage; therefore level 2 must be such that level 1 has 5K. 	
LOG statement	A LOG statement may be required at restart to reestablish the logging device. See <i>LOG Statement</i> under <i>Statement Descriptions</i> and <i>Loading Programs in a DPF Environment</i> for further information on the LOG statement.	

STATEMENT EXAMPLES

This section shows an example that illustrates some of the uses of the OCL statements. The example consists of a series of jobs. The jobs involve three files: customer, inventory, and transaction. The customer file contains such information as customer names and addresses, total amounts of charges over a period, and total amounts of payments over the same period. The inventory file contains such information as item numbers and descriptions, prices of the items, and the numbers of items in stock. The transaction file contains such information as orders for items, refund orders for items returned, and customer payments. The transaction file is used to update the inventory and customer files.

Example

The OCL statements for the jobs are shown in Figure 24. Sets of statements in the figure are numbered. The explanations corresponding to those numbers are given in the following section.

Explanation

 The DATE statement supplies the system date, 10/20/71. It must be read by the system before the first LOAD or CALL statement after initial program load. 2. Two programs are being compiled: one that transfers the customer file from cards to disk; and one that transfers the inventory file from cards to disk. The OCL statements for the RPG II Compiler are in a procedure called RPG. A CALL statement, therefore, is used to instruct the system to read the procedure each time the compiler is to be run. The procedure is located on the fixed disk on drive one.

The RPG II source programs following each set of CALL and RUN statements are input to the compiler. Like all input, each source program must be followed by a /* card. However, to be safe, /& statements were used before each LOAD and CALL statement in case the /* cards had not been placed after the source programs.

- 3. In the next two jobs, the object programs just compiled will be run. The comment and PAUSE statements are to remind the operator to place the object- program cards after the corresponding sets of OCL statements.
- 4. The system stops, temporarily, after each of the preceding compilations, giving the operator time to ensure that the compilations were successful. However, there is no need for the system to stop after the next few jobs. A NOHALT statement, therefore, is given at this point.

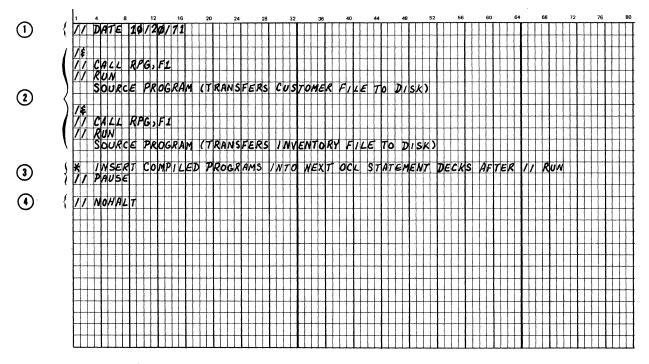


Figure 24 (Part 1 of 4). OCL Statement Example

5. The two object programs previously compiled are being run to transfer the customer and inventory files, respectively, to disk.

In each case, a disk file is being created. Both files are permanent. The name that will identify the customer file on disk is CUST; the inventory-file name is INV. The date for both files will be 10/20/71.

The cards containing the records to be transferred to disk are being read from the same device as the OCL statements. In each case, the cards must immediately follow the program that reads them. If the programs had been loaded from disk, the cards would have followed the RUN statement in each case.

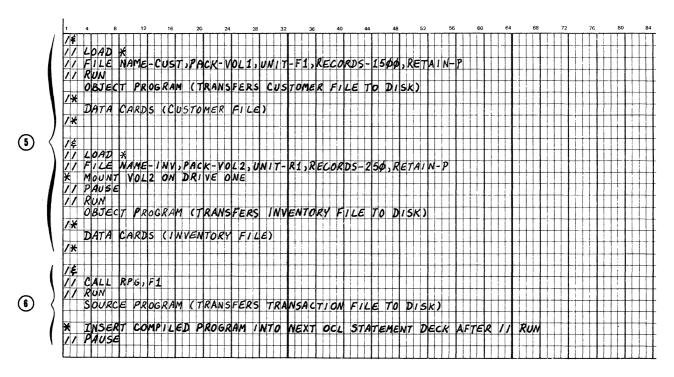


Figure 24 (Part 2 of 4). OCL Statement Example

		1	4			8			12			16			20	,		2	4			28			3	2			36	ŝ			40			4	4			48	3			52			6	6			60			64			68			;	72			76			80	0		8	84
		1Ę	Τ	Π	Τ	Π	Τ	Π	Π	T	Т	Π	Π	T	Τ	Γ		Τ	Т	Τ	Π		Τ	Τ	Т	T	T	Ι	Г	Г	Γ	Π		Π		Τ	Τ	Т	Γ	Γ	Т	Τ	Т	Γ	Γ	Π	Τ	Т	Τ	Π	Π	Τ	T	Π	Π	Τ	Ţ	Г			Τ		Т	Ţ	Π	T	Τ	Т	Π		Т
		11	L	d.	4 D		×								Τ											T		T		Γ						T	T		T		Τ							T																							Τ
		11	F	1	LE		V/	M	E	-]	TP	A	N	5	,F	A	С	K-	·h	0	L	2	, (1	V I	1	Г-	P	1	Ŀ	R	E	Т	A	1	M.	·h	1,	F	E	C	2	R	D	S	-	7	50	5,	L	0	c/	Y1	1	0	V-	-2	Ø	Ø				10.00								Ι
		11	R	U	۷																								L								I				L																	Ľ	Ĺ												1
		_		B	re	C	T	P	R	0(SR	A	M	([7	R	Å	N	1	Έ	R	5		T I	R/	4	١	5 A	C	π	1	0	N		F	1	.e	1	1	0	X	I)1	S	K)												L					_								
	1	/*														L		_								1				L									L	1	L				L		_	1	1				+				1				_										
			¥	A	TA		4	9K	D	5	1	7	K	41	42	И	Ç	Ţ	ľ	W	_	F	4	4	9,	4		+	L	Ļ	1					4	1		1	1	1.	L	1	1			_	1	+-	4		_	_		4	+	+	L	1		4	4	+	\downarrow	\square	⊢∔	_	\downarrow	μ	Ц	4
		/¥	-	\square	-	Ц	-			+	_	μ	Н	_	+			4	1	-		_	-	+	+	+	-	1	L	Ł	1			_		-	+	-	1	Ļ	Ļ	1	-	į_			+	+	+			_	+	\downarrow	H.	+	+	1			4	_	+	+	μ	⊢∔	+	+	╜	\square	4
\bigcirc	$\langle $	11	+	H		\square	-			+	-	μ	\mathbb{H}	-	+			-	╀	-		_	4	+	+	-	+	+	╞	₽	4_		_	_		+	╀	+	+	+	╞	+	+	-			-+	+	+-	-	-	+	+	\square	H	+	+	╞	-		4		-	+	\downarrow	H	+	╇	+	H	4
U.		11	n	P	17		+	+		+	+	μ	\mathbb{H}	-+	+		-	-	╀	+			+	+	+	+	-	+	╞	╞	╞	$\left \right $	-	\square		+	╞	+	╞	+-	╀	+	+	-	-		+	+	÷	┝		+	+	$\left \right $	H	+	+	╞			+	-	+	+	H	+	+	╀	+	+	-
		IE.	+	$\left \right $	+		+	+		+	+	μ	H		+	╞	-	+	+	+-	$\left \right $		+	+	+	+	+	+	┝	╀	+-		-	$\left \right $		+	╉	┝	┝	┢	╋	+	+	┝	┝		-+	+	+	┝		+	+	Н	H	+	╀	╞			+	+	+	+-	Η	H	+	╀	+	++	-
		11	1	0	AZ		£T	s	0	27	r,	F	1	+	+	┢	-	+	t	╈			+	+	+	t	+	+	┢	┢	+		-	-		+	+	+	╈	+	┢	t	+	+	┝		+	+	+	ŀ		+	+	Η	H	+	┿	t	+-		+	1	+	+	H	rt	+	+	H	H	+
		11			ie		N/	ũ	đ	-	iŃ	P	Ū	T	1	A	B	E		.7	R	A	N	s	, F	7	40	-	-	ħ	h	ī	2	,	U	N	h	1-	R	1	t	R	F	r	6	R	n	d.	. 7	5	ø	+	1	n	4	r	1	J.	L	2	Ø	h	+	+	$^{+1}$	H	+	t	t	H	+
		11	F		E		V.	M	e	-1	NO	R	K	21	1	c	ĸ	-1	k	Í	2	,	U	V	17	ŕľ	-	Ð	t	f	ľ					T	ľ	1	ľ	Ī	ľ	Ť		Ĩ	ľ		1	1	ť	ſ		1			A -	7	T	Ĩ	Ē		1	2	1	t	tt	iŤ	+	t	Ħ	Ħ	1
		11	F		E		W/	M	E	-0	Di	17	P	Ū.	ſ,	L	A	B	l	-	T	R	A	N	S	,	P/	łC	K	F	١V	0	L	2	,	U	ŧi	7	-	R	1	t,	R	E	C	0	el	x	1-	7	5	Ø	.1	0	c,	17	-1	b	V	_	2	6	1	t	H	Π	1	T	Ħ	Ħ	
		11	R	U	N					T		Π	Ĥ		T			T	t	T			T	T		T	T	T	T	T	T					T	T	T	T	T	T	7	ſ		Ē		-	T	T	ľ		1	T			T	T	Г			1	1		T	П	īΤ	T	T	T	IT	1
	۱ (S	0	RT		S۶	È	C	I F	- 1	C	A	T1	C	N		CI	ĄF	2D	5					I				Γ							Ι				Γ				L			T								Τ												Ι		Π	
																								T		I		Τ									Ι				Ι	Ì					Ī																				T	Τ			
		_								1			Ц	_	1	L							-			1															1																						1					T			
			_	\square	_	\square	\downarrow			+		μ	Ц	_	1			_	1				1	1	_	l	1	1	L	Ļ		Ц	_			4	Ļ	1			1	1	L	L	L		-	1	\downarrow			_	1		\square	+	1	L			1		1		μ	Ц	_	1			
		-		\square			+		4	4	+	μ	Н	4	\downarrow	1		\downarrow	1	L			4	_	-	1	1	1	L	L	1	Ц	_		-	1	1	1	Ļ	L	Ļ	1		1	L	_	4	1	1	1.		_	1		Ц	+	1	1_			_	_	_	1	Ц	\downarrow	_	\bot	1	Ц	1
			-			-	+	+		+	4-	\square	Н	+	+	-		+	+	+			_	-	-	1	+	+	L	╞	4		_			+	+	+	╞	1	Ļ	1	1	-	L		+	1	-	\parallel		_	-	μ	4	+	+-	ļ.	-		4		_	+	μ	⊢	4-	+	μ	\square	4
				\parallel		\square	+	+		+	+	μ	H	+	+			+	4	-			_	+	-	1	4	4	\bot	Ļ	1		_		-+	+	1	1	+	1	1	1-	1			-	_	4	+		_	-	-	\square	Ц	+	4.	L		\square	4	_	-	+-	Ц	⊢	+	+	μ	$\downarrow\downarrow$	4

Figure 24 (Part 3 of 4). OCL Statement Example

- A program that transfers a transaction file, TRANS, from cards to disk is being compiled. Because the resulting object-program cards are to be placed with the next set of OCL statements, comment and PAUSE statements are used to remind the operator.
- 7. The transaction file is first transferred from cards to disk, and then sorted on disk by the Disk Sort program. A HALT statement precedes the sort job so that the system will stop after the sort job. This gives the operator a chance to check any diagnostic messages to ensure that the sort was successful. The HALT statement remains in effect for the remaining jobs.

The INPUT and OUTPUT files are the same. The transaction file is read, sorted, and then written back on the same area of disk. The sort specification cards following the RUN statement are input to the Disk Sort program. Like all input, the last card must be a $/^*$ card.

- The program that updates the inventory file with information from the transaction file is compiled. Comment and PAUSE statements again remind the operator to include the object-program cards with the next set of OCL statements.
- 9. The program just compiled is run to update the inventory file. This program can also print the transaction-file records. The printed output file, however, is conditioned by external indicator U1. Because the SWITCH statement sets U1 on, the transaction records will be printed. If the SWITCH statement had not been used, the indicator would have remained off and the records would not have been printed (external indicators are all initialized off at IPL time).

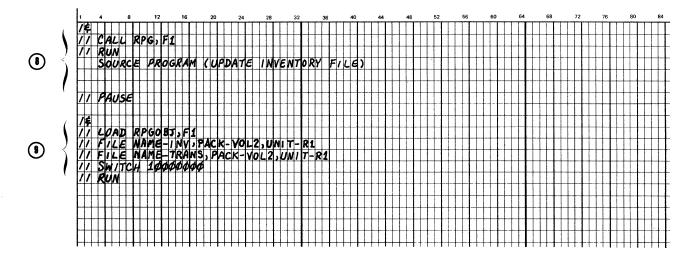


Figure 24 (Part 4 of 4). OCL Statement Example

82

÷ *

PART II. SYSTEM UTILITY PROGRAMS

and a start of the second second second second second second second second second second second second second s Second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second second

.

·

84

INTRODUCTION TO SYSTEM UTILITY PROGRAMS

The Disk System includes a group of disk resident utility programs. These programs do a variety of jobs, from preparing disks and tapes for use to maintaining the system libraries. The utility programs are:

- Tape Initialization
- Tape Error Summary Program
- Disk Initialization
- Alternate Track Assignment
- Alternate Track Rebuild
- File and Volume Label Display
- File Delete
- Disk Copy/Dump
- Dump/Restore
- Library Maintenance
- 5445 Data Interchange Utility

The information for every program is divided into five sections:

- Control statement summary
- Parameter summary
- Parameter descriptions
- OCL (operation control language) considerations
- Examples

TO WRITE UTILITY CONTROL STATEMENTS

To write utility control statements (see *Control Statements*), use the sections in the following way:

- 1. Look at the *Control Statement Summary* to determine which control statements and parameters apply to the program uses you are interested in. (The program uses are stated in the text preceding the *Control Statement Summary*.)
- 2. If you need information about the contents or meanings of particular parameters, look at the *Parameter Summary*.
- 3. If you need more detailed information about parameters, read the *Parameter Descriptions* following the *Parameter Summary*.
- 4. If you need examples of specific jobs, look at the *Example* section. All examples show the OCL statements and utility programs for specific jobs.
- 5. To find information concerning the use of the utility programs, refer to *OCL Considerations* for the necessary OCL statements.

Control Statements

All of the programs require utility control statements, which you must supply. These statements give the program information concerning the output you want the program to produce or the way in which you want the program to perform its function. The programs read these statements from the system input device. They must be the first input read by the programs.

Every control statement is made up of an *identifier* and *parameters*. The identifier is a word that identifies the control statement. It is always the first word of the statement. Parameters are information you are supplying to the program. Every parameter consists of a keyword, which identifies the parameter, followed by the information you are supplying.

Coding Rules

The rules for constructing control statements are as follows:

- 1. *Statement identifier.* // followed by a blank should precede the statement identifier. Do not use blanks within the identifier.
- 2. *Blanks.* Use one or more blanks between the identifier and the first parameter. Do not use them anywhere else in the statement.
- 3. *Statement parameters.* Parameters can be in any order. Use a comma to separate one parameter from another. Use a hyphen (-) within each parameter to separate the keyword from the information you supply. Do not use blanks within or between parameters.
- 4. Statement parameters containing a list of data after the keyword. Use apostrophes
 (') to enclose the items in the list. Use a comma to separate one item from another.
 For example: UNIT-'R1,R2' (R1 and R2 are the items in the list).
- 5. Statement length. All control statements except Library Maintenance statements must not exceed 96 characters. The following Library Maintenance statements can be continued on another statement. (See *Continuation* under *Coding Rules* in Part I of this manual.)

// ALLOCATE
// COPY (except for file-to-library)
// DELETE
// MODIFY (not REMOVE, REPLACE, or INSERT statements)
// RENAME

The following is an example of a control statement:

// COPY FROM-F1,LIBRARY-O,NAME-SYSTEM, TO-R1

The statement identifier is COPY. The parameter keywords are FROM, LIBRARY, NAME, and TO. The information you supply is F1, O, SYSTEM, and R1.

End Control Statement

The END statement is a special control statement that indicates the end of control statements. It consists of // END starting in position 1 and must always be the last control statement for the programs.

SPECIAL MEANING OF CAPITAL LETTERS, NUMBERS, AND SPECIAL CHARACTERS

Capitalized words and letters, numbers, and special characters have special meanings in OCL and utility control statement descriptions.

In utility control statements, capitalized words and letters must be written as they appear in the statement description. Sometimes numbers appear with the capitalized information. These numbers must also be written as shown.

Words or letters that are not capitalized mean you must use a value that applies to the job you are doing. The values that can be used are listed in the parameter summaries for the control statements.

Braces ($\{ \ \} \$) sometimes appear in parameters shown in control statement summaries and parameter summaries. They are not part of the parameters. They simply indicate that you must choose one of several values to complete the parameter. For example, RETAIN- $\{ \begin{array}{c} T \\ P \\ \end{array} \}$ means you can use either RETAIN-T or RETAIN-P.

a service and a service of the servi

ı

.

. 1

.

·

,

.

TAPE INITIALIZATION PROGRAM-\$TINIT

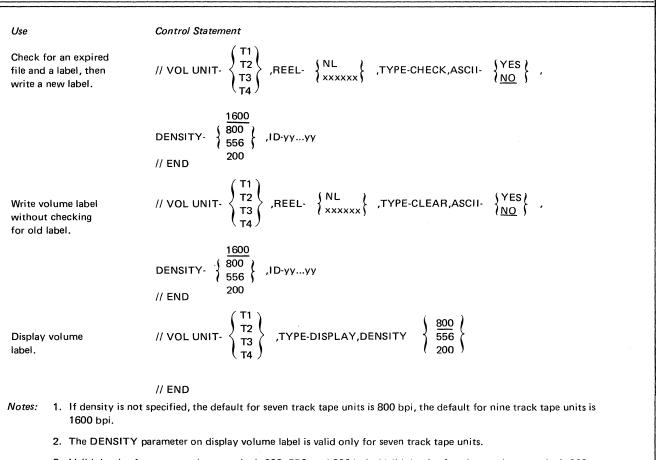
The Tape Initialization Program prepares tapes for use. It writes IBM standard volume labels on tape in order for tape data management to perform IBM standard label processing. The program is available on either card or disk.

The Tape Initialization Program performs these functions at your request:

- CHECK labeled tapes for a volume label and an unexpired file before writing a new volume label.
- CLEAR labeled or unlabeled tapes by bypassing CHECK and unconditionally initializing the tape.
- DISPLAY the volume and header labels.

All tapes must be initialized before use. Tapes that have been initialized need not be reinitialized unless you want to write a new volume label or use a tape that contains a permanent file for output. This program can either initialize (CLEAR or CHECK) or DISPLAY one tape per unit during the same program run.

CONTROL STATEMENT SUMMARY



3. Valid density for seven track tape units is 200, 556, and 800 bpi. Valid density for nine track tape units is 800 bpi (if dual density feature is installed), and 1600 bpi.

PARAMETERS	
TYPE-CHECK	Check to see if the file has expired, then write a new label. Do not use this on blank tapes because the program attempts to read a blank tape causing tape runaway.
TYPE-CLEAR	Write a new volume label without checking for an expired file.
TYPE-DISPLAY	Print the contents of the volume label and the header labels.
UNIT-code	Specifies which tape drive contains the tape to be initialized. Possible codes are: T1, T2, T3, and T4. A separate VOL statement is needed for each tape unit that contains a tape to be initialized.
REEL-NL	Specifies that an unlabeled tape is to be generated.
REEL-xxxxxx	Specifies the volume serial number that the Tape Initialization program writes on tape. Must be alphabetic A-Z, @, $\#$, \$, or numeric 0-9.
ASCII-YES	The tape is written in ASCII code. This is invalid for seven track tape.
ASCII-NO	The tape is written in EBCDIC code. If the ASCII parameter is omitted, NO is assumed.

PARAMETERS (cont	inued)
DENSITY-200	The tape is written at a density of 200 bits per inch. The file written on this tape unit must be written at this density.
DENSITY-556	The tape is written at a density of 556 bits per inch. The file written on this tape unit must be written at this density.
DENSITY-800	The tape is written at a density of 800 bits per inch. The file written on this tape must be written at this density.
DENSITY-1600	The tape is written at a density of 1600 bits per inch. The file written on this tape must be written at this density.
ID-xxxxxxxxx	Provides an additional identification field. This field is not processed by the system. A maximum of ten characters can be used if ASCII-NO is specified. If ASCII-YES is specified, 14 characters can be used. This is an optional parameter.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Tape Initialization program.

// LOAD \$TINIT,CODE // RUN

The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the Tape Initialization program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one.
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one.
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two.
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two.

MESSAGES FOR TAPE INITIALIZATION

Message	Meaning
INITIALIZATION ON ×× COMPLETE	This message is printed when initialization of a tape is complete. xx indicates the unit (T1, T2, T3, or T4) on which the initialization is complete.

PRINTOUT OF VOLUME LABEL

The following sample jobs shows the format of data printed by the Tape Initialization Program from a nine track tape unit and from a seven track tape unit.

 	LUAD STI HALT RUN		,						
11		-T1,TYPE-DI -T2,TYPE-DI							
				*** DISPLAY	ON UNIT TI	***			
	LABEL VOL1	SERIAL O TITITI	WNER CUDE						
	LABEL HDRI	FILE IDE FILE1	NTIFIER	FILE SER T1T1T1		SEQ 1 0001	ND CREATE DA 72251	TE EXPIRE DA 72251	
	LABEL HDR2	REC FORM F	BLK LENG 00018	REC LENG 00018	RECURDING E	TECH	PRTR CNTRL	BLK ATTR	
				*** DISPLAY	ON UNIT T2	***			
	LABEL VOL1	SERIAL U T2T2T2	WNER CODE	DISTER					
	LABEL HDR1	FILE (DE FILE2	NTIFIER	FILE SER T2T2T2		SEQ 1 0001	NO CREATE DA 72251	TE EXPIRE DA 72251	
	LABEL HDR2	REC FORM F	BLK LENG 00180	REC LENG 00018	RECORDING T	TECH	PRTR CNTRL	BLK ATTR B	
// // //	VOL UNI	INIT,F1 T-T1,TYPE-D1 T-T2,TYPE-D1 T-T3,TYPE-D1 T-T4,TYPE-D1	ESPLAY ESPLAY						
// // //	RUN VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI	T-T1,TYPE-D T-T2,TYPE-D T-T3,TYPE-D T-T3,TYPE-D T-T4,TYPE-D	ESPLAY ESPLAY	*** DISPLAY	ON UNIT T	1 ***			
// // //	RUN VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI END LABEL	T-T1,TYPE-D1 T-T2,TYPE-D1 T-T3,TYPE-D1 T-T4,TYPE-D1 SERIAL XRAY03	I SPLAY I SPLAY I SPLAY	*** DISPLAY File Ser Xray03	IAL VO	1 *** L SEQ 0001			
// // //	RUN VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI END LABEL VOL1 LABEL	T-T1,TYPE-D T-T2,TYPE-D T-T3,TYPE-D T-T4,TYPE-D SERIAL XRAY03 FILE ID TAPEOUT REC FORM	ISPLAY ISPLAY ISPLAY DWNER CODE	FILE SER	IAL VO	L SEQ 0001	ND CREATE D		
// // //	RUN VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI END LABEL VOL1 LABEL HDR1 LABEL	T-T1,TYPE-D T-T2,TYPE-D T-T3,TYPE-D T-T4,TYPE-D SERIAL XRAY03 FILE ID TAPEOUT REC FORM F	ISPLAY ISPLAY ISPLAY DWNER CODE ENTIFIER BLK LENG	FILE SER XRAYO3 REC LENG	RECORDING	L SEQ 0001 TECH	ND CREATE D 72082 PRTR CNTRL	9999 BLK ATTR	
// // //	RUN VOL UNI VOL UNI VOL UNI END LABEL VOL1 LABEL HDR1 LABEL HDR2 LABEL	T-T1,TYPE-D T-T2,TYPE-D T-T3,TYPE-D T-T4,TYPE-D SERIAL XRAY03 FILE ID TAPEOUT REC FORM F SERIAL	ISPLAY ISPLAY ISPLAY DWNER CODE ENTIFIER BLK LENG 01260 DWNER CODE	FILE SER XRAYO3 REC LENG 00084	TAL VOI RECORDING ON UNIT T	L SEQ 0001 TECH	ND CREATE D 72082 PRTR CNTRL	9999 BLK ATTR B ATE EXPIRE D	99 DATE

LABEL VOL1	SERIAL XRAY04	OWNER CODE	*** DISPLAY	ON UNIT T3	***		
LABEL HDR1	FILE ID TAPEOUT	ENTIFIER	FILE SER Xray04		SEQ ND 0001	CREATE DATE 72083	EXPIRE DATE 99999
LABEL HDR2	REC FORM F	BLK LENG 01260	REC LENG 00084	RECORDING	TECH PRT	R CNTRL BLI	K ATTR B
LABEL VOL 1	SERIAL TEST4	OWNER CODE	*** DISPLAY	ON UNIT T4	*** Ascii tape	LABEL	

MEANING OF VOLUME LABEL INFORMATION					
Display of Volume Label					
Heading	Meaning				
LABEL	VOL1 indicates this is a volume label.				
SERIAL	The volume serial number (from the REEL parameter).				
OWNER CODE	Additional identification (from the ID parameter).				
Display of Header 1 Labe	91				
Heading	Meaning				
LABEL	HDR1 indicates this is a header 1 label.				
FILE IDENTIFIER	The filename of the file on tape. This is the name from the LABEL parameter of the OCL FILE statement when the file was created.				
FILE SERIAL	The serial number of the tape volume. This is the same as the SERIAL field in the volume label.				
VOL SEQ NO	The sequence number of this volume in a multivolume file.				

MEANING OF VOLUME LABEL INFORMATION (continued)

Display of Header 1 Label	(continued)				
Heading	Meaning				
CREATE DATE	The date this file was created. This is a Julian date. The format is yyddd where yy is the last two digits of the year and ddd is the day in the year. Example: 72094 = the 94th day of 1972, or March 3, 1972.				
EXPIRE DATE	The date this file expires. This Julian date is the creation date plus the number of days specified by the RETAIN parameter on the OCL FILE statement.				
Display of Header 2 Label					
Heading	Meaning				
LABEL	HDR2 indicates this is a header 2 label.				
REC FORM	The record format of this file. (From the RECFM parameter on the OCL FILE statement when this file was created.) The formats are:				
	F – Fixed length				
	V Variable length				
	U — Undefined length				
BLK LENG	Block length. (From the BLKL parameter on the OCL FILE statement when this file was created.)				
REC LENG	Record length. (From the RECL parameter on the OCL FILE statement when this file was created.)				
RECORDING TECH	T - Odd parity with translation				
	C – Odd parity with conversion				
	E – Even parity without translation				
	ET – Even parity with translation				
	blank – Odd parity without translation or conversion				
PRTR CNTRL	Printer control character. This field will be blank on tapes created on System/3. For tapes created on other systems, the characters are:				
	A – ASCII control characters				
	M – Machine control characters				
BLK ATTR	blank — No control characters Block attributes:				
	B – Blocked records				
	S – Spanned records				
	R – Blocked and spanned records				
	blank – Neither blocked nor spanned				
	Note: Spanned records cannot be created on System/3.				

TAPE ERROR SUMMARY PROGRAM-\$TVES

The IBM System/3 Disk System keeps track of errors that occur on the tape drives. This error information is stored in the Customer Engineer tracks on 5444 fixed drive one. You should run the Tape Error Summary Program periodically to provide a summary, by volume and by unit, of temporary read and write errors.

There are no control statements necessary for this program. After being loaded from the program or system pack, the Tape Error Summary Program reads the data from the disk and sorts it by volume and unit. When all the data is read or the available main storage is filled, the error data is printed. If no tape errors are recorded, the message THERE ARE NO VALID TAPE ERRORS LOGGED is printed.

ERROR LOGGING FORMAT

SUMMARY (1) VOLUME SERIAL	MAGNETIC 2 SID COUNT	TAPE E 3 TEMP READ	ERROR STA	WRITE SKIP	BY VOLUME	DATE 03/27/72
T1 TAPE1 TAPE3	06512 00016 00021	0000 0000 0000	0028 0001 0001	0028 0001 0001		
SUMMARY TAPE UNIT	MAGNETIC 2 SIO COUNT	TAPE E 3 TEMP READ	ERROR STA (4) TEMP WRITE	WRITE SKIP	BY TAPE UNI 6 DIAG TRACK	T DATE 03/27/72
T1 T4	06528 00021	0000 0000	0029 0001	0029 0001	0000 0000	
 For unlabeled tapes and the first volume of a multivolume file that has more than two volumes per unit, ,,,,,, is printed as the volume serial. For tapes with non-standard labels, ***** is printed as the volume label. The number of tape operations performed. (SIO means Start I/O.) 						
	 Temporary read errors. Temporary write errors. 					
5 Write ski						
b Diagnost	b Diagnostic track errors. This is used by IBM Customer Engineers.					

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Tape Error Summary Program.

// LOAD \$TVES,code // RUN

The code is the disk unit that contains the program (F1, R1, F2, or R2).

DISK INITIALIZATION PROGRAM-\$INIT

All disks must be initialized before use. Disks that have been initialized need not be re-initialized unless you want to erase their contents and rename them.

The Disk Initialization program prepares disks for use. It does this by:

- Writing track and sector addresses on the disk.
- Checking for defective tracks, a process called surface analysis.
- Assigning alternate tracks to any defective tracks found.
- Writing a name on each disk to identify the disk.
- Formatting the volume table of contents.

The process is called initialization. The program can initialize up to five disks during the same program run.

There are three types of initialization: primary, secondary, and clear. Primary is used to initialize any disk to disk drive capacity. Secondary is used only when using the 5444 disk and only when the drive capacity of your system is increased and you have programs and data on your disks that you want to keep. Clear is used to unconditionally initialize a disk.

CAUTION

Clear will destroy any files or libraries that were previously on disk.

The control statements you supply for the Disk Initialization program depend on the type of initialization and the number of disks you are initializing.

ype of Initialization	Control Statements (1)		
rimary 🔃			
New Disks	// UIN TYPE-PRIMARY (3), UNIT- $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} code \\ codes' \end{array} \right\}$, VERIFY-number, CAP- $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} HALF \\ FULL \end{array} \right\}$		
	// VOL PACK-name, ID-characters, NAME360-characters		
	// END		
Disk already in use (reinitialize)	$// UIN TYPE-PRIMARY, UNIT- \begin{cases} code \\ 'codes' \end{cases}, VERIFY-number, ERASE- \begin{cases} NO \\ YES \end{cases}, CAP- \begin{cases} HALF \\ FULL \end{cases}$		
	// VOL PACK-name,ID-characters,NAME360-characters		
	// END		
Secondary 🕢:			
Disk already in use	// UIN TYPE-SECONDARY,UNIT- { code } ,VERIFY-number		
use	// END		
Clear (5):	// UIN TYPE-CLEAR, UNIT- $\begin{pmatrix} code \\ codes' \end{pmatrix}$, VERIFY-number, CAP- $\begin{cases} HALF \\ FULL \end{cases}$		
	// VOL PACK-name,ID-characters,NAME360-characters		
	// END		
 For primary initializat UIN statement. The F 	e required in the order they are listed: UIN, VOL, END or UIN, END. tion, one VOL statement is required for each disk listed in the UNIT parameter of the PACK parameter in the first VOL statement applies to the first disk listed in the UNIT K parameter in the second VOL statement applies to the second disk listed in the UNIT		
3 If the TYPE paramete	er is omitted, TYPE-PRIMARY is assumed.		
(I) VOL statements are not required for secondary initialization because the disks are already named.			
5 If the TYPE paramete	er CLEAR is selected, ERASE-YES is assumed.		
-			

PARAMETER SUMMARY

UIN (Input Definition) Statement

TYPE-PRIMARY	Primary initialization. Initialize the disks to the capacity of the drives on which they are mounted. Tracks already initialized are re-initialized. The program will not initialize disks containing libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files.		
TYPE-SECONDARY	Secondary initialization (5444 disk only). Applies only to disks that were initialized on drives of less capacity than the drives you are now using. It means initialize the uninitialized portions of the disks to the capacity of the drives on which the disks are mounted. Tracks already initialized are not disturbed.		
TYPE-CLEAR	Clear initialization. Initialize the disks to the capacity of the drives on which they are mounted. Tracks already initialized are re-initialized. Active files and library checking is bypassed and any data on the tracks is destroyed.		
UNIT-code	Disk location (one disk). Possible codes:		
UNIT-'code,code'	Disk location (two disks). R1, F1,		
UNIT-'code,code,code'	R2, F2Disk location (three disks).D1, D2		
UNIT-'code,code,code,code'	Disk location (four disks).		
UNIT-'code,code,code,code, code'	Disk location (five disks).		
VERIFY-number	Do surface analysis the number of times indicated (number can be 1-255). VERIFY-1 is assumed if you omit the parameter.		
ERASE-YES	Retest defective tracks. Primary initialization only. ERASE-NO is assumed if you omit the parameter.		
ERASE-NO	Do not retest defective tracks.		
CAP-HALF (1)	Initialize a disk to half capacity even if on a full capacity drive (5444 disk only).		
CAP-FULL ()	Initialize a disk to full capacity (5444 disk only).		
/OL (Volume) Statement			
PACK-name	Disk name. Can contain any of the standard System/3 characters except apostrophes leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas (2). Its length must not exceed six characters.		
ID-characters	Additional identification. Can contain any of the standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas 2. Its length must not exceed ten characters. If you omit this parameter no additional identification is written on the disk.		
NAME360-characters	Additional identification for 5445 disk. The name will be placed in the System/360 format 1 DSCB. Can contain any of the standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas (2). Its length must not exceed 44 characters. If you omit this parameter the program defaults to SYSTEM/3.DATA.		

PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

TYPE Parameter (UIN)

The TYPE parameter indicates the type of initialization you want the program to do: primary, secondary, or clear. The type of initialization and the capacity of the disk drives on which the disks are mounted determine which disk tracks will be initialized.

Disk Drive Capacity

Disk drives of different data-storage capacities are available for the System/3 Model 10 Disk System. The difference is the number of tracks the drives can use: the larger the drive capacity, the more tracks the drive can use. However, you must initialize the disk tracks before using them.

Primary Initialization

Primary initialization applies to new disks, or disks you have used but want to initialize again. The program initializes all tracks corresponding to the capacity of the drives on which the disks are mounted. Tracks that were previously initialized are initialized again. Any data on the tracks is destroyed.

Note: A 5445 disk with an invalid System/3 label must be initialized using the clear initialization.

You can use primary initialization on a disk as often as you want. However, the program will not initialize disks containing libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files. You must delete the files using File Delete and the libraries using the allocate function of Library Maintenance.

Secondary Initialization (5444 Disk Only)

Secondary initialization applies to disks that were initialized on drives of less capacity than the drives you are now using. When you increase the capacity of your drives, more tracks on your disks become available for use. You must initialize the additional tracks. Use secondary initialization if you do not want information destroyed on tracks already in use. The program initializes the additional tracks only. Tracks already in use are not disturbed.

The program will not do secondary initialization on new disks or disks that have already been initialized to the capacity of the drives on which they are mounted.

Clear Initialization

Clear initialization applies to new disks or disks previously used that require reinitialization due to invalid pack labels or some other unrecoverable disk error. All tracks corresponding to the capacity of the drives on which the disks are mounted are initialized. Tracks that were previously initialized are re-initialized.

Warning: All libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files are completely erased.

UNIT Parameter (UIN)

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) tells the location of the disks you want to initialize. The program can initialize up to five disks during one program run.

The form of the UNIT parameter depends on the number of disks you are initializing:

- 1. For one disk, use UNIT-code.
- 2. For two disks, use UNIT-'code,code'.
- 3. For three disks, use UNIT-'code,code,code'.
- 4. For four disks, use UNIT-'code, code, code'.
- 5. For five disks, use UNIT-'code,code,code, code'.

The codes indicate the locations of the disks:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D 2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

For primary initialization, the order of codes must correspond to the order of VOL control statements. If, for example, you had used the parameter UNIT-'R1,R2', the first VOL statement applies to the removable disk on drive one and the second VOL statement to the removable disk on drive two. (No VOL statements are required for secondary initialization. The disk is already named.)

You cannot initialize the pack from which you loaded the Disk Initialization program or the system pack.

VERIFY Parameter (UIN)

The VERIFY parameter (VERIFY-number) concerns surface analysis. It enables you to indicate the number of times you want the program to do surface analysis before judging whether or not tracks are defective. The number can be from 1 to 255. The greater the number specified in the VERIFY parameter the longer it takes to initialize the disk.

On a 5444, the time for initializing using VERIFY-1 is approximately two and one-half minutes. Each additional verify takes two minutes and ten seconds. On the 5445, the time for initializing using VERIFY-1 is approximately 15 minutes. Each additional verify on the 5445 takes seven minutes.

Surface Analysis

Surface analysis is a procedure for testing the condition of tracks. It consists of writing test data on tracks, then reading the data to ensure it was recorded properly.

In judging whether or not tracks are defective, the program does surface analysis the number of times you specify in the VERIFY parameter. If you omit the VERIFY parameter, surface analysis is done once. Tracks that cause reading or writing errors any time during surface analysis are considered defective. Defective tracks can be assigned alternates. The 5444 has six alternate tracks available; the 5445 has 60. If the program finds more than 6 or 60 defective tracks respectively, it considers the disk unusable and stops initializing it.

The program also considers the disk unusable if either track 0 or 1 is defective. Tracks 0 and 1 are used only by the system and cannot have alternates assigned to them. For the 5445 the program also considers the disk unusable if any tracks in cylinder 0 are defective.

Alternate Track Assignment

Alternate track assignment is the process of assigning an alternate track to a defective track. If the Disk Initialization program finds a defective track during surface analysis, it assigns an alternate track to the defective track. The alternate is, in effect, a substitute for the defective track. Any time a program attempts to use the defective track, it will automatically use the alternate instead. Each 5444 disk has six alternate tracks (tracks 2-7). Each 5445 disk has 60 alternate tracks (tracks 4000-4059).

If tracks become defective after a disk is initialized, another program (see *Alternate Track Assignment Program)* is used to assign alternate tracks. Disks need not be re-initialized to assign alternate tracks.

ERASE Parameter (UIN)

The ERASE parameter concerns alternate track assignment. It applies only to disks that have already been initialized and used, but which you are re-initializing using primary initialization.

The condition of tracks on such disks has been tested at least once before (during the previous initialization) and tracks that were found to be defective during surface analysis were assigned alternates. The ERASE parameter, therefore, enables you to indicate whether you want the program to (1) retest the tracks to which alternate tracks are already assigned, or (2) leave the alternate tracks assigned without retesting the tracks.

The parameter ERASE-YES means to retest. If you tell the program to retest, it erases any existing alternate track assignments, and tests all tracks as though the disk were new.

The parameter ERASE-NO means not to retest. If you tell the program not to retest, it tests only those tracks to which no alternate tracks are assigned. Alternate tracks previously assigned remain assigned.

Defective tracks are not retested if the ERASE parameter is omitted.

CAP Parameter (UIN)

The CAP parameter (5444 disk only) determines pack size when the pack is initialized. The CAP-HALF parameter means to initialize the pack to half capacity (100 cylinders; 200 tracks) even if it is on a full capacity drive. The CAP-FULL parameter means to initialize the pack to full capacity (200 cylinders; 400 tracks). The use of the CAP keyword forces ERASE-YES.

PACK Parameter (VOL)

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) applies to primary and clear initializations only. During initialization, the Disk Initialization program writes a name on each disk. It uses the name you supply in the corresponding PACK parameter. (One VOL control statement containing a PACK parameter is required for each disk.)

The name can be any combination of standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas (due to their delimiter function). (See Appendix A for a list of standard System/3 characters.) Its length must not exceed six characters. The following are valid disk names: 0,F0001, 012, A1B9, ABC.

In general, disk names are used for checking purposes. Before a program uses a disk, the disk name is compared with a name you supply (either in OCL statements or control statements required by the program). If the names do not match, the program halts and prints a message. In this way, programs cannot use the wrong disks without the operator knowing about it.

ID (Identification) Parameter (VOL)

The ID parameter (ID-characters) applies to primary and clear initializations only. It enables you to include a maximum of ten characters, in addition to the disk name, to further identify a disk. The characters can be any combination of standard System/3 characters (Appendix A) except apostrophes, leading or embedded blanks, and embedded commas (due to their delimiter function). The information is strictly for your use. (It is not used for checking purposes by the system.) If you use the File and Volume Label Display program to print the disk name, it will also print the additional identification for you.

NAME360 Parameter (VOL)

The NAME360 parameter (NAME360-name) is used to specify a filename for data interchange with System/360-System/370. System/360-System/370 can use data on a System/3 disk pack by treating the pack like a file. System/3 gives a default filename of SYSTEM/3.DATA. The NAME360 parameter can be used if you would like to code a filename of your own.

NAME360 can contain any of the standard System/3 characters except apostrophes, blanks and commas. Its length must not exceed 44 characters.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Disk Initialization program.

// LOAD \$INIT, code // RUN

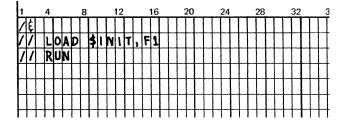
The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the Disk Initialization program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

EXAMPLES

Primary Initialization of Two Disks

Figures 25 and 26 are examples of the OCL statements and utility control statements needed for the primary initialization of two disks.



Explanation:

 Disk Initialization program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

Figure 25. OCL Load Sequence for Disk Initialization

1			4	ł				8				12				16				20)			24			_	28				32	2	;
	1	1	(J	1	N		U	N	1	Π	-	6	F	2	,	R	2	2	,	τ	Y	P	E	-	Ρ	R	1	M	A	R	Y		
1	1	1	h	1	0	L		P	A	C	K	-	2	2	2	2							Γ											
V	1	T	h	1	0	L	T	P	4	C	K	-	P	A	Y	R	0	L	,	1	D	-	0	1	Ø	2	7	ø						
1	1	T	ł		N	D	T	T	T	Γ	T	Г		T	ſ			T			ŕ	Γ	T		ŕ									

Explanation:

- The two disks on drive two are being initialized (UNIT-'F2,R2' in UIN statement).
- The fixed disk (F2) will be given the name 2222 (PACK-2222 in first VOL statement).
- The removable disk (R2) will be given the name PAYROL (PACK-PAYROL in second VOL statement). Additional identifying information, 010270, will be written on the removable disk (ID-010270).

Figure 26. Utility Control Statements for Primary Initialization of Two Disks

MESSAGES FOR DISK INITIALIZATION

Message	Meaning
INITIALIZATION ON XX COMPLETE	This message is printed when initialization of a disk is complete. XX indicates the unit (R1, R2, F1, F2, D1, or D2) on which the initialization is complete.
INITIALIZATION ON XX TERMINATED	This message is printed when initialization of a disk must be terminated for one of the following reasons:
	1. Cylinder zero is defective.
	2. More than 6 5444 tracks or 60 5445 tracks are defective.
	3. Possible disk hardware error exists.
	4. The program attempted to initialize the disk ten times without success.
	After this message is printed, halt 33 will occur. XX indicates the unit (R1, R2, F1, F2, D1, or D2) on which the initialization is terminated.
ALTERNATE TRACKS ASSIGNED	These two messages are printed when a primary track is defective and an alternate track is assigned to it.
PRIMARY TRACK XXX ALTERNATE TRACK XXX	XXX indicates the tracks involved.
UNRECOVERABLE ERROR; RE-INITIALIZING PACK	This message is printed when the Disk Initialization program determines that the disk has not been initialized properly. The program will again attempt to initialize the disk correctly with ERASE-YES forced. The maximum number of times that the program will attempt to initialize a disk is ten. After that number of times, halt 33 occurs.

Disk Initialization Program-\$INIT 103

ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT PROGRAM-\$ALT

The Alternate Track Assignment program assigns alternate tracks to disk tracks that become defective after they are initialized. An alternate track is a track that can be assigned to replace another track. When the program assigns an alternate, it transfers the contents of the defective track to the alternate. The 5444 has 6 alternate tracks, the 5445 has 60. An alternate track can replace any track except 0 and 1 on the 5444 or 0-19 of cylinder 0 on the 5445.

The program has three uses. The control statements you must supply depend on the program use.

The program uses and the situations to which they apply are as follows:

Program Use	Situation
Conditional assignment. Program tests the condition of a track and assigns an alternate to it if it is defec- tive. (This is the normal use.)	Any time a disk track causes reading or writing errors during a job, the system halts with a code indicating that a disk error has occurred. You would now run the Alternate Track Assignment program to do conditional assignment.
Unconditional Assignment (1) Program assumes the track is defective and assigns an alternate to it without testing its condition.	You have used the Alternate Track Assignment program to do conditional assignment. The test on the track indicated that the track was not defective (an alternate, therefore, was not assigned). But the track still causes reading or writing errors, and you want to assign an alternate to it.
Cancel prior assignment. (1) Program cancels an alternate track assignment to free the alternate for use with another track.	A defective track was found, but all alternates are in use. You want to free an alternate so you can recover the data from the defective track. Before freeing the alternate, however, you would normally copy (to another disk) the file or library entry that uses the alternate. This saves the data that is already on the alternate.

 (\mathbf{I}) Whenever you request an unconditional assignment or cancel prior assignment, any pending suspected defective tracks are checked (conditional assignment).

CONTROL STATEMENT SUM	MARY
Use	Control Statements
Conditional Assignment	// ALT ^② PACK-name,UNIT-code,VERIFY-number // END
Unconditional Assignment	// ALT ^② PACK-name,UNIT-code,ASSIGN- { track } // END
Cancel Prior Assignment	// ALT ² PACK-name,UNIT-code,UNASSIGN- { track } ,VERIFY-number 3 // END
①For each use, the program r	equires the statements in the order they are listed: ALT, END.
(2) There can be only 6 ALT st	atements per job.
(3) The VERIFY parameter app (See Program Use and Situa	plies to the automatic conditional assignment that follows the unconditional request. tion.)

PARAMETER SUMMARY:	ALT (ALTERNATE	E) STATEMENT
PACK-name	Name of the disk.	
UNIT-code	Location of the di codes are R1, F1,	
VERIFY-number	In testing the conc do surface analysis times indicated (no 1-255). If VERIF omitted, do surfac	s the number of umber can be Y parameter is
ASSIGN-track	Assign an alter- nate (uncon- ditionally) to one track.	Use track num- bers 8-205 or 8-405 (for 5444) 20-3999 (for 5445) to identify
ASSIGN-'track,track,'	Assign one alter- nate (uncon- ditionally) to each track (maximum is six).	tracks. Tracks 0-1 for the 5444 or 0-19 for the 5445 are used by the system and cannot be assign- ed alternates.
UNASSIGN-track	Cancel one alternate track assignment. ①	Use track num- bers 8-405 (for
UNASSIGN-'track,track,'	-	5444), or 20-3999 (for 5445) to which alternates are assigned.

PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

PACK Parameter

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the disk containing the defective tracks. This is the name written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program. (See *Disk Initialization Program.*)

The Alternate Track Assignment program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to ensure they match. In this way, the program ensures that it is using the right disk.

UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) indicates the location of the disk containing defective tracks. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

VERIFY Parameter

The VERIFY parameter (VERIFY-number) concerns conditional assignment. (See *Program Use* and *Situation* for unconditional and cancel prior assignments.) It enables you to indicate the number of times you want the program to do surface analysis before judging whether or not the track is defective. The number can be from 1-255. If you omit the parameter, the program does surface analysis once.

Conditional Assignment

Conditional assignment consists of testing the condition of a track (surface analysis) and, if the track is defective, assigning an alternate track to replace it. It is the normal use of the Alternate Track Assignment program.

- Situation. Conditional assignment applies to tracks that cause reading or writing errors during a job. Any time a track causes such errors, the system does the following:
 - 1. Stops the program currently in operation.
 - 2. Writes the track address in a special area on the disk.
 - 3. The system then halts with a halt code indicating a permanent disk I/O error. You can then run the Alternate Track Assignment program.

When you use the Alternate Track Assignment program to do conditional assignment, the program locates the tracks by using the addresses in the special area on disk. All disks, fixed and removable, have such an area. The program will do conditional assignment for all tracks identified in the area (one at a time), as long as there are alternate tracks available for assignment.

Surface Analysis. Surface analysis is a procedure the program uses to test the condition of tracks. It consists of writing test data on a track, then reading the data to ensure it was written properly.

> Before doing surface analysis, the Alternate Track Assignment program transfers any data from the track to an alternate track. This is the alternate that will be assigned if the track proves to be defective.

In judging whether or not the track is defective, the program does surface analysis the number of times you specify in the VERIFY parameter. If you omit the parameter, the program does surface analysis once. If the track causes reading or writing errors any time during surface analysis, the program considers the track defective.

Assignment of Alternate Tracks. If a track proves to be defective, the program assigns an alternate track. The alternate becomes, in effect, a substitute for the defective track. Any time a program attempts to use the defective track, it automatically uses the alternate instead.

The 5444 has 6 alternate tracks; the 5445 disk has 60. The program will not do conditional assignment if all alternate tracks are in use.

Incorrect Data. If a track is defective, some of the data transferred to the alternate track could be incorrect. Therefore, when reading data from the defective track, the program prints all track sectors containing data that caused reading errors. Characters that have no print symbol are printed as 2-digit hexadecimal numbers.

The following is an example:

ABCDE GH123 56... B A 6 4

Appendix A lists the characters in the standard character set and their corresponding hexadecimal numbers.

To correct errors on the alternate track, use the Alternate Track Rebuild program.

ASSIGN Parameter

The ASSIGN parameter (ASSIGN-track) applies to unconditional assignment. It tells the program which tracks you want alternates assigned to.

For 5444, you can assign alternates to any tracks except 0-7, which are for system use only. For 5445 you can assign alternates to any tracks except 0-19 or 4000-4059; for system use only.

The form of the ASSIGN parameter depends on the number of tracks you want to specify. For one track, use ASSIGN-track; for two tracks, use ASSIGN-'track, track'; and so on. You can specify up to six tracks.

Use the track numbers 8-405 (for 5444) or 20-3999 (for 5445) to identify the tracks. For example, the parameter ASSIGN-'50,301,353' causes the program to assign alternate tracks to tracks 50, 301, and 353.

Unconditional Assignment

Unconditional assignment applies to tracks that occasionally cause read or write errors. Such tracks might not cause errors when tested by the Alternate Track Assignment program during conditional assignment. If they don't, the program will not assign alternate tracks to them. If you still want to assign alternates to these tracks, use unconditional assignment. In doing unconditional assignment, the program assigns alternates without first testing the condition of the tracks suspected of being defective.

UNASSIGN Parameter

The UNASSIGN parameter (UNASSIGN-track) applies to cancelling alternate track assignments. It identifies tracks for which you want the program to cancel assignments.

You can cancel up to six assignments. The form of the UNASSIGN parameter depends on the number of assignments you want to cancel. For one assignment, use UNASSIGN-track; for two assignments, use UNASSIGN-'track, track'; and so on.

Use the track numbers 8-405 (for 5444) or 20-3999 (for 5445) to identify the tracks. For example, the parameter UNASSIGN-'50,301,352' causes the program to cancel alternate-track assignments for tracks 50, 301, and 352.

Cancel Prior Assignment

Cancelling an alternate track assignment consists of transferring the data from an alternate track back to the original track (the track to which the alternate is assigned), therefore, freeing the alternate from being the substitute for the original track.

Before transferring data back to the original track, the Alternate Track Assignment program tests the condition of the original track. If the test indicates that the track is defective, the program stops. Through the restart procedure you choose, you can tell the program to do one of four things (see *IBM System/3 Disk System Halt Guide*, GC21-7540):

- Cancel the assignment and transfer the data back to the original track regardless of the condition of the original track.
- 2. Test the track again.
- 3. Leave the assignment as it is. If there are other tracks for which you are cancelling assignments, the program continues with those. Otherwise, it ends.
- 4. Cancel the job.

Cancelling assignments is not often done. It applies to cases where a defective track is found, but all six alternates are in use. To recover the data from the defective track, you might want to cancel an alternate track assignment to free the alternate track. Normally this involves copying, to another disk, a file or library entry that uses an alternate track, then freeing the alternate for use with the defective track you found.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Alternate Track Assignment program.

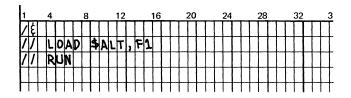
// LOAD \$ALT,code // RUN

The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the Alternate Track Assignment program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

Situation

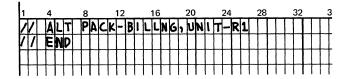
The sytem cancels a job if a defective track is found on the removable disk on drive one. (The name of the disk is BILLNG.) Before doing more jobs, the operator wants to use the Alternate Track Assignment program to check the condition of the track and assign an alternate to the track if it is defective.



Explanation:

 Alternate Track Assignment program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

Figure 27. OCL Load Sequence for Alternate Track Assignment



Explanation:

- The name of the disk (BILLNG) and its location (removable disk on drive one) are indicated by the PACK and UNIT parameters in the ALT statement.
- Because we omitted the VERIFY parameter from the ALT statement, the program does surface analysis once when it tests the condition of the tracks.

EXAMPLES

Conditional Assignment

Figures 27 and 28 are examples of the OCL statements and utility control statements needed for a conditional assignment as described in the following situation.

Figure 28. Utility Control Statements for a Conditional Assignment

MESSAGES FOR ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNMENT

Message	Meaning
ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNED	This message is printed when an alternate track has been assigned to a defective track and the data has been trans- ferred to the alternate track.
PRIMARY TRACK HAS BEEN TESTED OK	This message is printed when it is determined that a primary track is not defective.
PRIMARY TRACK STILL DEFECTIVE	This message is printed when the Alternate Track Assignment program determines that the track is still defective.
DATA TRANSFERRED BACK TO PRIMARY TRACK	This message is printed when the data is transferred back to the primary track.
SECTOR WITH DATA ERROR	This message is printed when the Alternate Track Assignment program found an error when transferring data. The sector that has the error is printed out.
RECORD WITH DATA ERROR	This message is printed when the Alternate Track Assignment program found an error when transferring data. The record that has the error is printed out.
PRIMARY TRACK xxx ALTERNATE TRACK yyy, UNIT-zz	This message is printed after ALTERNATE TRACK ASSIGNED and DATA TRANSFERRED BACK TO PRIMARY TRACK. xxx is the primary track number, yyy is the alternate track number, and zz is the unit involved.

The Alternate Track Rebuild program enables you to correct data that could not be transferred correctly to an alternate track. One or more alternate tracks can be corrected during a program run. You must supply the control statements and data used to correct the errors.

In writing control statements for this program, you will need the information printed by the Alternate Track Assignment program when it assigned the alternate track. The printed information tells you the name of the disk and numbers of the track and sectors suspected of containing incorrect data. It also includes the data from these sectors, which you can use to locate incorrect data. On the 5445, fixed record refers to a physical 256-byte record, similar to the sector on the 5444.

ters.)

CONTROL STATEMENT SUM	MARY 1	PARAMETER
// REBUILD PACK-name,UNI number,DISP-position	T-code,TRACK-location, LENGTH-	REBUILD Sta
Substitute data		PACK-nam
// END		UNIT-code
To replace characters 1-12 either of the following:	and 75-78 of a sector, you can use	TRACK-lo
1. Use one REBUILD s with a LENGTH par	tatement to replace all the characters ameter of 78.	
2. Use one REBUILD s you correct.	tatement for every set of positions [:]	
•	itute must follow the REBUILD ies. The order of the statements xample would be:	
// REBUILD statement data // END	for positions 1-78	
// REBUILD statement data	for positions 1-12	LENGTH-
// REBUILD statement data	for positions 75-78	
// END		DISP-posit

R AND SUBSTITUTE DATA SUMMARY tatement Name of the disk. me Location of the disk. Possible codes are łe R1, F1, R2, F2, D1, D2. ocation 5444 Disk Unit-Number of track and sector containing incorrect data. Number is printed by Alternate Track Assignment program. Track number must be three digits; sector number must be two digits. (TRACK-01109 means track 11 sector 9). 5445 Disk Unit-Number of track and fixed record containing incorrect data. Number is printed by Alternate Track Assignment program. Track number must be four digits; fixed Record number must be two digits. (TRACK-011109 means track 111, fixed record 9). Number of characters being replaced. -number Number can be 2-256 and must be a multiple of 2 (2, 4, 6, etc.). ition Position of the first character being replaced in the sector. Position can be 1-255. Substitute Data Code each character in hexadecimal form. Follow every second character, except the last, with a comma. EXAMPLE: The numbers 123456 would be coded as F1F2,F3F4,F5F6. (Appendix A lists the hexadecimal codes for System/3 charac-

PARAMETER AND SUBSTITUTE DATA DESCRIPTIONS

PACK Parameter

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the disk that contains the alternate track being corrected. This name is the one written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program.

The Alternate Track Rebuild program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to see if they match. In this way, the program ensures that the program is using the right disk.

UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) indicates the location of the disk that contains the alternate track being corrected. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

TRACK Parameter

The TRACK parameter (TRACK-location) identifies the track and sector that contains the data being corrected. The defective track, not the alternate track, is the one you refer to. Referencing the defective track is the same as referencing the alternate track.

For the 5444 disk, the possible track numbers are 008-405. Always use three digits. The possible sector numbers are 00-23. Always use two digits. The track number must precede the sector number. For example, the parameter TRACK-11019 means track 110, sector 19.

For the 5445 disk, the possible track numbers are 0020-3999. Always use four digits. The possible fixed record numbers are 01-20. Always use two digits. The track number must precede the fixed record number. For example, the parameter TRACK-111019 means track 1110, record 19.

Track and sector numbers are printed by the Alternate Track Assignment program when it prints data from sectors that contain incorrect data.

LENGTH Parameter

The LENGTH parameter (LENGTH-number) tells the program how many characters you are replacing in the sector or fixed record. You must replace characters in multiples of 2 (2, 4, 6, and so on). The maximum is 256, which is the capacity of a sector or fixed record.

Length applies to characters that occupy consecutive positions in the sector or fixed record. If the characters you want to replace do not occupy consecutive positions, you must either replace all intervening characters or use more than one REBUILD statement. For example, to replace characters 10-11 and 24-25 in a sector or fixed record, you can do either of the following:

- Use one REBUILD statement to replace characters 10-25 (LENGTH-16).
- Use two REBUILD statements to replace characters 10-11 (LENGTH-2) and 24-25 (LENGTH-2).

DISP (Displacement) Parameter

The DISP parameter (DISP-position) indicates the position of the first character being replaced in the sector or fixed record. The position of the first character is 1; the position of the second character is 2, and so on. The maximum position you can specify is 255.

Beginning at the position you indicate, the Alternate Track Rebuild program replaces the number of characters you indicate in the LENGTH parameter.

Substitute Data

After each REBUILD statement, you must code the substitute characters that apply to that statement. The characters must be in hexadecimal form. Appendix A shows the hexadecimal codes for the System/3 character set.

Include a comma after every second character. For example, the data F1F2,F3F4,F5F6 represents 123456. F1 is the hexadecimal form of 1; F2 is the hexadecimal form of 2; and so on.

Code only the number of characters you indicated in the LENGTH parameter in the REBUILD statement.

Note: If the LENGTH parameter of the REBUILD statement exceeds 38, at least two substitute data cards are required. Each substitute data card, except the last one, must be completely filled with data and must have a comma in column 95 and a blank in column 96. If the 1442 is the only input device, it is possible to have only one substitute data card.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Alternate Track Rebuild program.

// LOAD \$BUILD, code // RUN

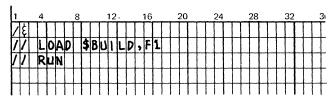
The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the Alternate Track Rebuild program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

EXAMPLES

Correcting Characters on an Alternate Track

Figures 29 and 30 are examples of the OCL and utility control statements needed for correcting characters on an alternate track.



Explanation:

 Alternate Track Rebuild program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

Figure 29. OCL Load Sequence for Alternate Track Rebuild

1	1	4			Ę	3			1	2			1	16				20	I			24			:	28			3	32			З	6			4	0			4	4			48	3		ļ	52			Ę	56		6	D	i	64		e	58		-	72	
11		R	E	3	ון	1)	F	2	¥.	C	K	-	B	۱	L	L	N	G	,	U	N	۱	Т	-	R	r		Т	R	А	C	ĸ	- (1	29	6	ø	6,	1	-16	N	G	T	μ	-	4	,	D	1	5	P.	- 1	ļ¢	8									Τ
C 7	٢	8	2	c	۶ſ		1																																																										Ι
11		E	N	2																																																													
																																													Ι										Ι										Ι
					T	I		Τ	T	T	I																																	I																					

Explanation:

- The name of the removable disk (BILLNG) and its location (drive one) are indicated in the PACK and UNIT parameters in the REBUILD statement.
- The sector containing the incorrect characters is sector 0 of the alternate track assigned to track 20 (TRACK-02000). The character in position 120 is the first character being replaced (DISP-120).
- The characters in positions 120 through 123 in sector 0 are being replaced (LENGTH-4).
- The substitute characters follow the REBUILD statement. They are G (C7), H (C8), I(C9), and 1 (F1).

Figure 30. Utility Control Statements for Correcting Characters on an Alternate Track

Situation

Assume that the Alternate Track Assignment program printed the following information:

SECTOR WITH DATA ERROR

TRACK 02000	110	.20 Z ABCDEFGH				
	FFFFFF903B524677 FEDCBAFBEDFEF705		CCCCCCD ABCDEFO	DDDDDDEE ABCDEF01	EEEEEE ABCDEF	FFFFFF000000 ABCDEF000000

55202A

It means that errors were detected in sector 0 of track 20. (Assume the name of the disk is BILLNG.)

In checking the characters printed by the program, you found that the characters in positions 120-123 in the sector are incorrect and you want the operator to run the Alternate Track Rebuild program to correct them.

FILE AND VOLUME LABEL DISPLAY PROGRAM--\$LABEL

The File and Volume Label Display program has two uses:

- 1. Print the entire Volume Table of Contents (VTOC) from a disk.
- 2. Print only the VTOC information for certain data files.

In both cases, the program also prints the name of the disk.

The printed VTOC information is a readable, up-to-date record of the contents of the disk. There can be any number of reasons why you might need the information. Some of the more common ones are as follows:

- 1. Before re-initializing a disk, you might want to check its contents to ensure that it contains no libraries, permanent data files, or temporary data files.
- 2. You want to find out what disk areas are available for libraries or new files.
- 3. You want specific file information, such as the file name, designation (permanent, temporary, scratch), or the space reserved for the file.

The control statements you supply for the program depend on the program use.

CONTROL STATEMENT SUMMARY			PARAMETER SUMMARY (DISPLAY STATEMENT)		
<i>Uses</i> Print entire VTOC	Control Statement ① // DISPLAY UNIT-code, LABEL-VTOC // END		UNIT-code	Location of the disk containing the VTOC information being printed. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2, D1, D2.	
Print only file information from VTOC	// DISPLAY UNIT-code, LABEL- {filename } ② // END		LABEL-VTOC LABEL-filename	Print entire contents of VTOC. Print VTOC information for one file.	
The statements in the program requires the statements in the order they are listed: DISPLAY, END.			LABEL-'filename,filename,	Print VTOC information for more than one file. 1	
The number of filenames you list for a program run may not exceed 20. (VTOC is considered as one filename.)			① The number of filenames yo exceed 20. (VTOC is consid	ou list for a program run may not dered as one filename.)	

PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) indicates the location of the disk containing the VTOC information being printed. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

LABEL Parameter

The LABEL parameter indicates the information you want printed: the entire contents of the VTOC or only the information for certain files. The VTOC is an area on disk that contains information about the contents of the disk. Every disk, fixed and removable, contains a VTOC.

Code	Meaning	Entire Contents of VTOC
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one	The parameter LABEL-VTOC means to print the entire contents of the VTOC. The meaning of the information the program prints is given in the following chart. Headings that are listed are the
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one	ones printed by the program to identify the informa- tion. Figures 31 and 32 are examples of VTOC printouts.
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two	If the program needs more than one page to list the file information it prints the headings for the
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two	file information at the top of each new page.
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one	
D2	Removable disk on	

PACK-111111

ID-ANDERSUN

5445 drive two

NO. UF ALTERNATE TRACKS AVAILABLE-2

TRACKS WITH ALTERNATE ASSIGNED-302,200

DEFECTIVE ALTERNATE TRACKS-3,5

DEVICE CAPACITY-400

LIBRARY I	EXTENT		START 008	 EXTENDED 027	END
AVAILABL	E SPACE	ΟN	PACK		

LUCATION	TRACKS
C28	367
399	001
401	001

PACK-111111	UNI T-	-K1	DATE	11/11	/70								
FILE	FILE	KEEP	FILE	REC	KEY	KĒY	NEXT AVAIL	NEXT AVAIL	IND	EX	DA	IA	VOL
NAME	DATE	TYPE	TYPE	LEN	LEN	LOC	RELORD	KEY	STARI	ENU	START	ĒNU	SEL
COST	09/21/71	т	S	0128			405/11/129				405	405	00
MASTER	03/14/71	Ρ	Ş	0128			404/11/129				404	404	00
EMPLOYEE	12/07/70	P	ì	0128	05	0005	* * * *	402/01/129	402	402	403	403	02
UPDATE	09/14/71	T	1	0128	05	0005	396/11/129	395/CC/185	395	395	396	396	00
PARTS	08/09/71	T	υ	0128			* * * *				400	400	01
SERIAL	08/16/71	т	S	0128			398/11/129				398	398	00
ADDRESS	09/21/71	т	S	0080			397/06/065				397	397	00
BACKUP	09/29/71	S	S	0128			399/11/129				399	399	00

Figure 31. VTOC Printout Example

55201A

PACK-010101 10-

NU. UF ALTERNATE TRACKS AVAILABLE-60

AVAILABLE SPACE UN PACK

LUCATION	TRACKS	
001/00	3941	
1 99/00	0002	

PACK-ULUI	UUL	UNIT-	UL.	UATE	0410	29/71							
FILE	FILE	KEEF	FILE	REC	KEY	KEY	NEXT AVAIL	NEXT AVAIL	1 /01	JEX	0A'	TA	VUL
NAME	DATE	TYPE	TYPE	LEN	LÉN	LÜÜ	RECURD	KEY	START	END	START	END	SEQ
COST	09/21/	71 T	D	0120			****				199/10	199/19	9 00
MASTER	03/14/	/71 P	O	0030			****				199/08	199/09	9 00
EMPLUYEE	12/07/	170 P	I	0050	05 0	0006	199/03/01/101	199/02/01/019	199/02	199/02	199/03	199/07	7 00
PARTS	08/09/	/71 T	υ	0256			****				198/18	198/19	9 00
ADDRESS	09/21/	171 1	S	0030			198/10/01/061				198/16	198/17	7 01
SERIAL	08/16/	/71 T	S	0100			198/01/01/201				198/01	198/15	5 00
UPDATE	09/14/	171 5	I	0200	03 0	1001	199/01/02/145	199/00/01/015	199/00	199/00	199/01	199/01	1 00

Figure 32. VTOC Printout Example of 5445 Disk

MEANING OF VTOC INFORMATION

Heading	Meaning	
PACK-name	Name of the disk.	
ID-characters	Additional disk identification (if	any).
NUMBER OF ALTERNATE TRACKS AVAILABLE-number	Number of alternate tracks availa	able for assignment.
TRACKS WITH ALTERNATE ASSIGNED	Numbers of primary tracks that	have been assigned an alternate.
DEFECTIVE ALTERNATE TRACKS	Numbers of the alternate tracks	that are defective.
DEVICE CAPACITY-number	Disk drive capacity (number of t	tracks) - 5444 disk only.
LIBRARY EXTENT	Boundary of libraries on the disl these headings are not printed.)	k. (If the 5444 disk contains no libraries,
START	Track on which library begins.	If 5444 disk contains both source and
END	Track on which library ends.	object library, START refers to begin- ning of source library and END refers to end of object library.
EXTENDED END	• • •	only). Track on which extension to library I, temporary entries can be placed in space ad that space is available.
AVAILABLE SPACE ON PACK	Available disk areas.	
LOCATION	First track in available area (544	14). First cylinder/track in available area (5445).
TRACKS	Number of tracks available.	
PACK-name	Name of the disk.	
UNIT-code	Location of the disk containing	the VTOC information.
DATE-xx/xx/xx	Program level date	
FILE NAME	Name that identifies file in VTC	DC.
FILE DATE	Date given the file when file wa	s placed on disk.
КЕЕР ТҮРЕ	File designation: P = permanent T = temporary S = scratch	
FILE TYPE	File type: I = indexed S = sequential D = direct SS = split cylinder, sequent SD = split cylinder, direct B = basic file	tial
REC LEN	Number of characters in each re	
KEY LOC	Indexed files only. Number of a Indexed files only. Position in 1 key.	record occupied by last character of record

118

Heading	Meaning
NEXT AVAIL RECORD	Beginning location of next available record in file. For 5444 disk, location is track, sector, and position within sector. For 5445 disk, location is cylinder, track, fixed record, and position within record. EXAMPLE: 099/18/006 = track 99, sector 18, position 6.
	$050/02/12/006 \approx$ cylinder 50, track 2, fixed record 12, position 6.
NEXT AVAIL KEY	Indexed files only. Beginning location of next available record key in index portion of file. For 5444 disk, location is track, sector, and position within sector. For 5445 disk, location is cylinder, track, fixed record, and position within record. EXAMPLE: 090/10/006 = track 90, sector 10, position 6.
	052/03/10/006 = cylinder 52, track 3, fixed record 10, position 6.
INDEX START END	Indexed files only. For 5444 disk, tracks on which index starts (START) and ends (END). For 5445 disk, cylinder/track on which index starts (START) and ends (END).
DATA START END	Disk area reserved for the file. START is the first 5444 track or 5445 cylinder/ track of the area. END is the last 5444 track or 5445 cylinder/track. For indexed files, this refers to the data portion of the file.
VOL SEQ	VOL SEQ applies to multivolume files only. It indicates the order of this disk as it relates to the other disks containing the remaining portion of the file.
(1) If the first byte of the next ava field will contain ****.	ilable record occurs in the next track after the end track of DATA START END then this
If the first byte of the next available the this field will contain ***	ailable key occurs in the next track after the end track of INDEX START END, **.

File Information Only

~

The parameter LABEL-filename or LABEL-'filenames' means to print certain file information from the VTOC. For one file, use LABEL-filename; for two files, use LABEL-'filename,filename'; and so on. (Use the names that identify the files in the VTOC.) You can list 20 filenames for a program run. The statement length, however, is restricted to 96 characters.

The program prints the file information for each of the files you list. This is the information described for the headings PACK name and FILE LABEL in the chart, *Meaning of VTOC Information*.

If the program needs more than one page to list the file information, it prints headings for the file information at the top of each new page.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are used to load the the File and Volume Label Display program.

// LOAD \$LABEL,code // RUN

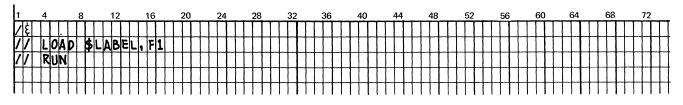
The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the utility program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

EXAMPLES

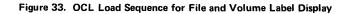
Printing VTOC Information for Two Files

Figures 33 and 34 are examples of the OCL statements and utility control statements needed to print VTOC information for two files.



Explanation:

• The File and Volume Label Display program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.





Explanation:

 The files for which information is printed are named BILLNG and INVO1 (LABEL-'BILLNG,INVO1' in DISPLAY statement). They are located on the removable disk on drive one (UNIT-R1).

Figure 34. Utility Control Statements for Printing VTOC information for Two Files

The File Delete program has three uses:

- Remove all files from a disk.
- Remove only the files you name.
- Scratch file references in the Volume Table of Contents (VTOC). Deleting files frees the space they occupy for use by new files.

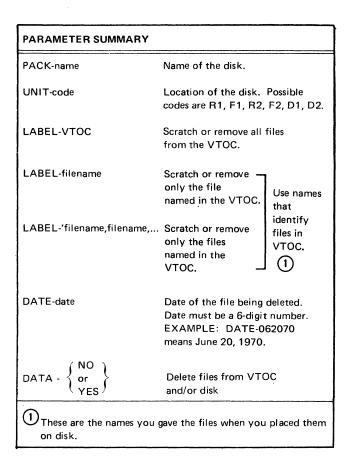
The program may be used on temporary, scratch and permanent files. To delete permanent files, you must use the File Delete program. You can scratch temporary files by using the File Delete program or by changing the file designation from temporary to scratch (using the OCL keyword RETAIN) when you use the file.

The control statements you supply for the File Delete program depend on the function to be performed.

The SCRATCH statement does not erase files from the disk. It changes their designation to scratch (S) in the Volume Table of Contents (VTOC). By doing this, the program makes the areas that contain the files available for other files or for system programs. A halt will occur if an attempt is made to create a new multivolume file that will have the same label on disk as an existing single volume file, or an attempt is made to create a single volume file bearing the same label as an existing multivolume file. The halt will occur even though the existing file is a scratch file. If a REMOVE statement is used, files are erased from the VTOC. The REMOVE statement can also be used to erase files from the disk. No file is physically scratched or removed from the VTOC until end of job has occurred.

CONTROL S	TATEMENT SUMMARY						
Use	Control Statements 1						
Scratch all files in the VTOC.	// SCRATCH PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL-VTOC // END						
Scratch only one file in the VTOC.	// SCRATCH PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL-filename, DATE-date 2						
Scratch multiple files in the VTOC	// SCRATCH PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL- {filename } /'filenames' (NO)						
Remove all files from disk	// REMOVE PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL-VTOC, DATA-						
Remove only the files named from disk	// END // REMOVE PACK-name, UNIT-code, LABEL- { filename 'filenames' DATE-date, DATA- { NO or YES }						
	// END						
	The statements in the order they are listed: SCRATCH, END, or REMOVE, END.						
Use this form of the SCRATCH or REMOVE statement when two or more files have the same name and you want to delete one of them.							

.



PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

PACK Parameter

- The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the disk that contains the files being deleted. The name you supply in this parameter is the one written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program.
- The File Delete program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to ensure they match. In this way, the program ensures that it is using the right disk.

UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) tells the program the location of the disk containing the files being deleted. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

LABEL Parameter

The LABEL parameter identifies the files you want to delete from the disk. Its form depends on the files you are deleting:

Form	Files Deleted
LABEL-VTOC	All of them.
LABEL-filename	Only the file that is named. The name can apply to more than one file. If it does, all of those files are deleted unless you use a DATE parameter to identify a particular one.

Form

Files Deleted

LABEL-'filename,filename,...'

Only the files that are named. A name can apply to more than one file. If it does, all of those files are deleted. You can list as many filenames as the statement can hold: the statement length, however, is restricted to 96 characters. Additional **REMOVE** or SCRATCH statements may be used for additional filenames. The maximum number of files that can be deleted in one run is 40.

DATE Parameter

The DATE parameter can only be used with LABEL-filename. The DATE parameter (DATEdate) applies to two or more files that have the same name. It tells the program the date of the one you want to delete.

Every file on disk has a date, which is given to the file at the time it is created. When two or more files have the same name, the dates are used to tell one file from another.

If the pack has more than one file with the name you list in the LABEL parameter, they will all be deleted unless you use the DATE keyword and parameter to indicate a particular file. If the DATE keyword is used, only one filename can be given in the LABEL parameter for that control statement.

The date is a 6-digit number: two digits for day, two for month, and two for year. Day, month, and year can be in one of two orders: (1) month, day, year, and (2) day, month, year. For example, 061870 and 180670 both mean June 18, 1970.

In the DATE parameter, be sure to specify day, month, and year in the same order as they were specified when you placed the file on disk.

DATA Parameter

The DATA parameter lets you remove the files specified directly from the disk as well as from the VTOC.

If YES is coded in this parameter, the file specified will be removed from the disk and any reference to it in the VTOC will be removed. In addition, a message will be printed on the system log device for each file removed from the disk in this format:

'DATA REMOVED FOR FILE XXXXXX DATE 000000'

DATA-YES should only be used if file security is required. The time needed to remove the data is much greater than the time needed to remove the VTOC entry.

If NO is coded in this parameter, the file specified will not be removed from the disk. However, any reference to it in the VTOC will be removed. If this parameter is not used, DATA-NO is assumed.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the File Delete program:

// LOAD \$DELET,code // RUN

The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the utility program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

EXAMPLES

Deleting One of Several Files Having the Same Name

Figures 35, 36, and 37 are examples of the OCL statements and utility control statements needed to delete one of several files having the same name as described in the following situation.

Situation

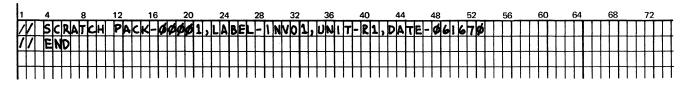
Assume that three files on a removable disk have the same name: INVO1. The dates of these files are 6/16/70, 8/18/70, and 11/15/70. You want to delete the version dated 6/16/70.

1		4			8	}		1	2			1	3			20			2	4		28		3	32			36	3		4	ю			44	ŧ		2	18			5	2			56			60)		6	54		68	3	7	12		
	ŧ	Τ			Τ				Τ		Τ	Τ	Ι	Γ			Π	Τ	Ι	Τ	Γ			Τ		Ι			T							Γ	Π		Ι	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	Π		Τ		Τ	Γ			Τ		Τ		Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ
1	/	Ľ	0	AL)	\$	D	E		E	r ,	F	1				Π		T	Ι						Ι	Τ	Τ	Ι					Τ	Ι	Γ	Π			T	Τ	T	Τ	Ι			T	Ι			Γ						Τ	Τ	Τ	Ι
1	/	R	U	N	Τ				Τ		Τ	Τ		Γ			Π			Т	Γ			Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Т					Τ		Γ				Τ			Τ	Τ			Τ			Γ							Τ	Τ		T
																	Π												Γ				Τ	Τ	Τ	Γ																								Ι
. [Τ			Τ	Τ	Γ	Γ	Π	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ							T	Τ	Π	Π	Τ			T	Γ		Π	T		Τ	Τ	T	I						Γ	Γ			Τ		Γ	T		Τ	T

Explanation:

• File Delete program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

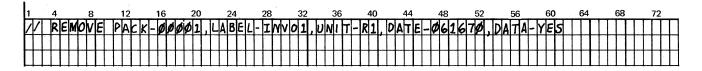
Figure 35. OCL Load Sequence for File Delete



Explanation:

- Disk that contains the file being deleted is named 00001 (PACK-00001 in SCRATCH statement).
- Because two other files have the name INVO1, the date (061670) is needed to complete the identification
 of the file you want to delete (LABEL-INVO1 and DATE-061670).
- The removable disk containing the file to be deleted is on drive one (UNIT-R1).

Figure 36. Utility Control Statements to Delete One Version of a File



Explanation:

- A REMOVE statement is used instead of a SCRATCH statement.
- Disk that contains the file being deleted is named 00001 (PACK-00001 in REMOVE statement).
- Because two other files have the name INV01, the date (061670) is needed to complete the identification of the file you want to delete (LABEL-INV01 and DATE-061670).
- The removable disk containing the file to be deleted is on drive one (UNIT-R1).
- The YES specification in the DATA parameter will delete all data from the disk containing information on the specified file.

Figure 37. Utility Control Statement to Delete One Version of a File Using a REMOVE Statement

DISK COPY/DUMP PROGRAM-\$COPY

The Disk Copy/Dump program has three general uses. The control statements you must supply depend on the program use.

The program uses and most common reasons for them are as follows:

Program Use	Common Reasons
Copy entire contents of one disk to another.	Provide a reserve disk in case something happens to the original disk. Important disks, such as those containing your libraries and permanent data files, are normally the ones you would copy.
Copy a data file from one disk to another, or from one	Any of the following:
area to another on same disk.	 Provide a reserve file in case something happens to the original file.
	• Move a file to a larger disk area.
	 Re-organize the data portion of an in- dexed file. (Data in the copy of the file is re-organized; the original file is un- changed.)
	 Delete records from a file. (Records are omitted from the copy of the file; the original file remains unchanged.)
Print all or part of a data file.	Provide a printed copy of the records in a file, perhaps for use in checking the records for errors.

The OCL sequence used to load the program describes the disk file being copied or printed. If you are copying the file to disk, the file being created must also be described in the OCL sequence.

CONTROL STATEME	INT SUMMARY
Uses (1)	Control Statements 2
Copy an Entire Disk	// COPYPACK FROM-code,TO-code
	// END
Copy a Data File	// COPYFILE OUTPTX- -or- OUTPUT- O
	// END
Copy and Print a Data File	// COPYFILE OUTPTX- OUTPUT- BOTH, DELETE- -or- OMIT- OMIT- 'position, character', REORG-YES, WORK- WORK- YES
	// END (OUTPTX-) (DELETE-)
Copy a Data File, But Print Only a	// COPYFILE $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} OUTPTX \\ -or-\\ OUTPUT- \end{array} \right\}$ BOTH, $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} DELETE-\\ -or-\\ OMIT- \end{array} \right\}$ 'position,character', $\mathfrak{D}_{REORG-YES}$, \mathfrak{O}_{WORK-} $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} NO\\ -or-\\ YES \end{array} \right\}$ ()
Part of the File	-07-
	// SELECT KEY,FROM-'key' () -or- One of these
	// SELECT RECORD,FROM-number -or-
	// SELECT RECORD,FROM-number,TO-number
	// SELECT PKY, FROM-'key'
	-or- // SELECT PKY,FROM-'key',TO-'key' 🕖
Print an Entire Data File	// COPYFILE { OUTPTX-} // COPYFILE { -or- } PRINT OUTPUT-)
	// END (OUTPTX-)
Print Only a Part of a Data File	// COPYFILE { -or- { PRINT
	// SELECT KEY,FROM-'key'
	// SELECT KEY,FROM-'key',TO-'key'
	// SELECT RECORD,FROM-number
	-or- // SELECT RECORD,FROM-number,TO-number
	// SELECT PKY,FROM-'key'
	-or- // SELECT PKY,FROM-'key' ,TO-'key' ①
	// END
The program uses	include the possible combinations of copying and printing files.
For each use, the p COPYFILE,SELE	program requires the control statements in the order they are listed: COPYPACK, END; COPYFILE, END; and CT,END.
Needed only if you	u want to delete a certain type of record. DELETE cannot be used with direct files.
• Applies only to inc	dexed files. When OUTPUT-BOTH is specified, REORG-YES is required.
	es if you are copying the file from one removable disk to another using the same disk drive (drive one). WORK-NO copying the file from one area to another on the removable disk on drive one.
	ion you want to print.
Index files with pa	

PARAMETER SUMMARY	
COPYPACK Statement	
FROM-code	Location of disk to be copied. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2, D1, D2.
TO-code	Location of disk to contain the copy. Possible codes are R1, F1, R2, F2, D1, D2.
COPYFILE Statement	
OUTPUT-DISK	Copy the file from one disk to another, or from one area to another on the same disk. 1
	Print the entire file or only part of the file. 1
оитрит-вотн (4)	Copy the file from one disk to another, or from one area to another on the same disk. (1) Also print the entire file or only part of it.
OUTPTX- { DISK } PRINT { BOTH }	Printed output will be displayed in hexadecimal values.
DELETE-'position,character' -or- OMIT-'position, character'	These parameters are optional. It means that all records with the specified character in the speci- fied record position are deleted. DELETE causes deleted records to be printed. OMIT causes deleted records not to be printed. Position can be any position in the record (the first position is 1, second 2, and so on). The maximum position is 9999.
	Indexed files only. Copy records in the same way as they are organized in the original file (the file from which the records are copied).
$\operatorname{REORG-YES}(2)(4)$	Indexed files only. Reorganize the records so that the records in the data portion of the file are in the same order as their keys are listed in the index.
WORK-NO	Required for copying a file from one area to another on a removable disk on drive one (R1 or D1) It means: do not use a work area.
WORK-YES 3	Required for copying a file from one removable disk on drive one to another removable disk on that drive. It means: use a work area on the fixed disk on drive one or on the removable disk on drive one if the file being copied is on the 5445. R1 must have a minimum of 198 contiguous unused tracks.
{KEY PKY},FROM-'key'	Indexed files only. Print only the part of the file from the record key that is specified in the FROM parameter to the end of the file.
KEY PKY,FROM-'key',TO-'key'	Indexed files only. Print only the part of the file between the two record keys that are specified in the FROM and TO parameters (including the records indicated by the parameters). To print only one record, make the FROM and TO record keys the same.
RECORD, FROM-number	Print only the part of the file from the relative record number specified in the FROM parameter to the end of the file.
RECORD,FROM-number, TO-number	Print only the part of the file between the relative record numbers indicated by the parameters (including the records indicated by the parameter). To print only one record, the FROM and TO record keys should be the same.

In the OCL load sequence, you indicate which file is to be copied or printed. For files being copied, you must also indicate whether the file is being copied from one disk to another or from one location to another on the same disk.

2 REORG-NO is assumed if you omit the REORG parameter. When OUTPUT-BOTH is used for indexed files, REORG-YES is required.

WORK-NO is assumed if you omit the WORK parameter.

1

3

If halt UC3CCS occurs, indicating that there is not enough core available to execute the job, consider the following:

1. If you have OUTPUT-BOTH, change to OUTPUT-DISK.

2. If you have REORG-YES, change to REORG-NO.

3. If running on a DPF system, use a larger partition if possible.

PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

FROM and TO Parameters (COPYPACK)

The COPYPACK statement is used to copy the contents of one disk to another. It has two parameters: FROM and TO. They tell the program the locations of the two disks on the disk unit.

The FROM parameter (FROM-code) indicates the location of the disk you are copying. The TO parameter (TO-code) indicates the location of the disk that is to contain the copy. The FROM and TO codes must be for the same type disk drive. You cannot copy a 5444 pack from or to a 5445 pack.

Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on 5444 drive one
F1	Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
R2	Removable disk on 5444 drive two
F2	Fixed disk on 5444 drive two
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

Copying Entire Disk

When copying a disk, the Disk Copy/Dump program transfers the contents of the disk to another disk. The content of the two disks will be the same, except for the disk names and alternate track information which may be different.

The disk you are copying can contain libraries or data files or both. The disk that is to contain the copy must not contain libraries, temporary data files, or permanent data files.

The program can copy the contents of one removable disk to another using one disk drive. The drive however, must be drive one when using the 5444 disk. (The system pack and the pack from which the Disk Copy/Dump program is loaded must be F1.)

To do this the program needs 20 tracks on the fixed disk on drive one (5444 disk). It fills this space with information from the disk you are copying. Then it prints a message telling the operator to mount the other removable disk (the one to contain the copy) on drive one. After transferring the information from the fixed disk to the removable disk, the program prints another message telling the operator to remount the disk you are copying. The program repeats this procedure until all information has been transferred.

Until the contents of the disk is completely copied on the new disk, three addressing portions of the new disk are changed to prevent accidental usage of a partially filled disk. Therefore, if the copying process is stopped before it is completed, the pack is unusable. You can restart the copying process by reloading the Disk Copy/Dump program, or you can resotre the disk by reinitializing.

After a successful copy, the copy program prints a message:

COPYPACK IS COMPLETE

Note: If you copy a disk containing an active checkpoint, that checkpoint will exist on both the FROM and TO disks. When one of the two active checkpoints is utilized to restart the checkpointed program, care must be taken to ensure that the job is not restarted a second time. To ensure that this will not occur, it is recommended that you perform IPL and load Restart (\$\$RSTR) from the pack containing the second active checkpoint. If you then select the controlled cancel option when the Hb/nn halt occurs (nn is the last requested checkpoint number), the checkpoint will be activated.

OUTPUT Parameter (COPYFILE)

The OUTPUT parameter is used when copying and printing data files. It indicates whether you want the program to copy, print, or copy and print a file. The OUTPTX parameter can be used to display printed output in hexadecimal values.

The parameter OUTPUT-DISK means to copy the file; OUTPUT-PRINT means to print the file; and OUTPUT-BOTH means to copy and print the file.

The output file must be a new file unless the file you are copying over is a temporary file, in which case, the following rules apply:

1. If RECORDS were used to create the temporary file, then the COPYO file card must specify RECORDS and LOCATION. RECORDS must be equal to the number used to create the original file.

2. If TRACKS were used to create the temporary file, then the COPYO file card must specify TRACKS and LOCATION. TRACKS must be equal to the number used to create the original file.

Copying Files

The Disk Copy/Dump program can copy a file from one disk to another or from one area to another on the same disk.

The Disk/Copy Dump program cannot be used to copy a single volume file to a multivolume file or one volume of a multivolume file to a single volume file.

The OCL load sequence for the Disk Copy/Dump program indicates (1) the name and location of the file being copied, and (2) the name and location of the copy being created. (See OCL Considerations in this section.)

The program can copy a file from one removable disk to another using one disk drive. The drive, however, must be drive one. (See description of the WORK parameter for more information.) (The system pack and the pack from which the Disk Copy/Dump program is loaded must be F1.)

In copying a file, the program can omit records. (See the description of the DELETE parameter for more information.)

Printing Files

The program can print all or part of a data file. To print only part, the program needs a SELECT control statement. (See the description of the SELECT control statement parameters in this section.) If you do not use a SELECT statement, the entire file is printed.

If you use SELECT or REORG, records from indexed files are printed in the order their keys appear in the index portion of the file; otherwise, they are printed as they appear in the file. For each record, the program prints the record key followed by the contents of the record.

Records from sequential and direct files are printed in the order they appear in the file. For each record, the program prints the relative record number followed by the contents of the record. The program uses as many lines as it needs to print the contents of a record. Appendix A lists the hexadecimal numbers for characters in the standard character set.

The following is an example of the way the program prints hexadecimal numbers using OUTPTX:

ABCDE GHIJ 12345

CCCCCBCCCDFFFFF4444444 1234567891123450000000

The hexadecimal number B6 represents a character that has no print symbol.

After printing the last record, the printer triple spaces and prints the following message:

(number) RECORDS PRINTED

DELETE Parameter (COPYFILE)

In copying a data file, the Disk Copy/Dump program can omit records of one type. The DELETE parameter identifies the type of record. Use of the DELETE parameter is optional. If you do not use it, no records are deleted.

The form of the parameter is DELETE-'position, character'-. *Position* is the position of the character in the records. *Character* is the character, except for apostrophes, blanks, or commas, that identifies the record. For example, with the parameter DELETE-'100,R', all records with an R in position 100 are deleted. By specifying the hexadecimal code for the character, any character (including apostrophes, blanks, commas, and packed data) can be used to identify the records to be deleted. For example, with the parameter DELETE-'100, X40', all records with a blank (hexadecimal 40) in position 200 are deleted.

Deleted records are always printed. If you are both copying and printing a data file, deleted records are printed with the other records that are printed. The deleted records are preceded by the word DELETE.

The OMIT keyword can be used instead of DELETE. The deleted records are not printed if OMIT is used.

REORG (Reorganize) Parameter (COPYFILE)

In copying an indexed file, the program can reorganize the file, such that the records in the data portion are in the same order as their keys in the file index. The REORG parameter tells the program whether or not to reorganize the file.

REORG-YES means to reorganize. REORG-NO means not to reorganize. REORG-NO is assumed if you omit the parameter.

If you tell the program to reorganize the file, the reorganization applies to the copy of the file rather than the original file. The original file is not affected.

Reorganization (REORG-YES) is required when you are both copying and printing an indexed file (OUTPUT-BOTH).

WORK Parameter (COPYFILE)

The WORK parameter applies to copying a data file from (1) removable disk to another using the same disk drive (WORK-YES), or (2) one area to another on a removable disk on drive one (WORK-NO). It tells the program whether or not to use a work area on the fixed disk on drive one.

The parameter WORK-YES means to use a work area. WORK-NO means not to use a work area. WORK-NO is assumed if you omit the WORK parameter.

Work Area

If you have only one disk drive, a common use of the Disk Copy/Dump program might be to copy a file from one removable disk to another. To do this, the program must use a work area on the fixed disk.

If you are copying on 5445 drive one, the work area will be on R1. R1 must contain a minimum of 198 contiguous unused tracks. It is recommended, however, that R1 contain no files or libraries as the number of pack changes on D1 will decrease with an increase in work area space. You cannot copy split cylinder files from D1 to D1 using WORK-YES. In copying the file, the program fills the work area with records from the file you are copying. Then it prints a message telling the operator to mount the other removable disk (the one to contain the copy) on drive one. After transferring the records from the work area to the removable disk, the program prints another message telling the operator to remount the disk containing the file you are copying. The program repeats this procedure until all records have been transferred.

If you have two disk drives, you can still use the same drive to copy a file from one removable disk to another. The drive, however, must be drive one.

You can copy a file from one area to another on the same disk. If you do, and the disk is a removable disk that you plan to mount on drive one, use the WORK-NO parameter. This keeps the program from using a work area on the fixed disk when it transfers the file from one area to the other.

When using WORK-YES, the input and output files must have different labels, locations, or pack names. It is good practice to have different pack names on all packs in an installation.

SELECT KEY and SELECT PKY Parameters (SELECT)

The SELECT KEY and SELECT PKY parameters apply to printing part of an indexed file. The SELECT PKY parameter applies to printing part of the index file which contains packed keys. The parameters are FROM and TO.

The FROM parameter (FROM-'key') gives the key of the first record to be printed. The TO parameter (TO'key') gives the key of the last record to be printed. The record keys between those two in the file index identify the remaining records to be printed. If you want to print only one record, use the same record key in both the FROM and TO parameters.

For example, the parameters FROM-'000100' and TO-'000199' mean that records identified by keys 000100 through 000199 are to be printed.

If the file index does not contain the key you indicate in a FROM parameter, the program uses the next higher key in the index. You can omit the TO parameter. If you do, the program assumes that the last key in the index is the TO key.

You can use fewer characters in the FROM or TO parameter than are contained in the actual keys; when keys are packed, however, you must use the same number of characters as contained in the actual keys. If you use fewer characters, the program ignores the remaining characters in the record key. The number of characters used in the FROM and TO parameters need not be the same.

SELECT RECORD Parameters (SELECT)

The SELECT RECORD parameters can apply to any file, but are normally used for sequential and direct files. These parameters use relative record numbers to identify the records to be printed.

Relative record numbers identify a record's location with repsect to other records in the file. The relative record number of the first record is 1, the number of the second record is 2, and so on.

The SELECT RECORD parameters are FROM and TO. The FROM parameter (FROM-number) gives the relative record number of the first record to be printed. The TO parameter (TO-number) gives the number of the last record to be printed. Records between those two records in the file are also printed.

For example, the parameters FROM-1 and TO-30 mean that the first thirty records (1-30) in the file will be printed.

You can omit the TO parameter. If you do, the program assumes that the number of the last record in the file is the TO number. If you want to print only one record, use the same number in the FROM and TO parameters.

COPYING MULTIVOLUME FILES

When copying multivolume files the first volume of the input file has to be online when the job is initiated. The output file must be a new file. If either condition is not satisfied, a halt occurs.

Maintaining Proper Volume Sequence Numbers

To maintain proper volume sequence numbers when copying a multivolume file, you must either copy all the volumes of the file in one run or copy only one volume for each run of \$COPY. For example, if you copy a 3-volume file one volume at a time (volume 1 in the first run, volume 2 in the second run, and volume 3 in the third run), the volumes will retain their original sequence numbers in the output file. Or if you copy all the volumes (1, 2, and 3) in the same run, the volume sequence numbers in the new file will be the same as in the orginal file. However, if you copy only volumes 2 and 3 in one run, their volume sequence numbers will be changed to 1 and 2 in the output file.

\$COPY will insure that all volumes of a multivolume file have the same date in the following manner. If only one volume of a multivolume file is copied, for each run of \$COPY, the new file will assume the same data as the input file. If all volumes, or as in the example above, volume 2 and 3 of a 3volume file are copied in a single run, the new file will assume the current system data.

Maintaning Correct Relative Record Numbers

To maintain correct relative record numbers when copying one volume of a multivolume direct file, the size of the output volume must be the same as the size of the input volume. (If you want to increase the size of a file, you must copy the entire file.) If you copy the first volume of a 2-volume file and increase the number of records on that volume, you are also increasing relative record numbers of all records on the next volume. Therefore, to maintain the correct relative record numbers, output and input volume extents must be equal if you are copying only one volume of a multivolume direct file.

Direct File Attributes

If you copy an entire multivolume direct file in one run, the output file will be given sequential attributes in the Volume Table of Contents (VTOC). However, this does not effect file processing. A file with either sequential or direct attributes can be accessed by a consecutive or random access method. If only one volume is copied, the direct attributes will be maintained.

Copying Multivolume Indexed Files

If you want to copy a multivolume file, REORG-YES must be given in the FILE statement. Since an unordered load to a multivolume indexed load is not permitted, a REORG-NO will cause a halt if an out of sequence record is encountered. If you would prefer not to reorganize the file, it must be copied one volume at a time. When copying one volume at a time, the HIKEY on the output volume must be the same as the HIKEY on the input volume. Making the HIKEYs the same will ensure that both the input and output volumes are the same length and no records will be lost. When copying one volume of a multivolume file, either REORG-YES or REORG-NO may be specified.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Disk Copy/Dump program, if you are using the program to copy an entire disk.

// LOAD \$COPY, code // RUN The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the Disk Copy/Dump program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

If you are copying or printing files you must (1) describe the disk files being copied or printed and (2) describe the file being created. To do this, the following OCL statements are needed in the load sequence:

// LOAD \$COPY,code

// FILE NAME-COPYIN, UNIT-code, PACK-diskname, LABEL-filename

// FILE NAME-COPYO, UNIT-code, PACK-diskname, LABEL-filename,

// { TRACKS-number } ,RETAIN-code

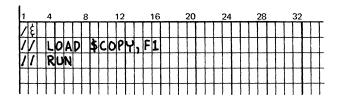
// RUN

Statement Statement Considerations Entry Entry **Considerations** // LOAD // FILE NAME-COPYO Name Disk Copy/Dump \$COPY Name of Disk Copy/Dump program uses to refer to program. output file being created. Location of disk concode UNIT-code Location of disk on which taining Disk Copy/Dump output file is to be created. program. Can be R1, R2, Can be R1, R2, F1, F2, F1, F2. D1, D2. // FILE PACK-diskname Name of disk on which output file is to be identi-NAME-COPYIN Name Disk Copy/Dump fied on disk. program uses to refer to file to be copied (input LABEL-filename Name by which output file). file is to be identified on disk. Location of disk containing UNIT-code file to be copied. Can be **TRACKS-number** Size of output file ex-R1, R2, F1, F2, D1, D2. **RECORDS-number** pressed either as number of records (RECORDS) Name of disk containing PACK-diskname or number of disk tracks file to be copied. (TRACKS). Name by which file to be **RETAIN-code** LABEL-filename Designation (temporary, copied is identified on disk. permanent, or scratch) of output file. Can be T, P, or S. // RUN

For further information on the FILE statements, see *Disk File Statement, File Processing Considerations* in Part I of this manual.

EXAMPLES

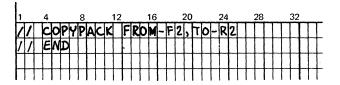
Figures 38 through 43 are three examples of the OCL statements and utility control statements needed to (1) copy an entire disk, (2) copy a file from one disk to another and (3) print part of a file. Each of the three examples has two figures.



Explanation:

 The Disk Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

Figure 38. OCL Load Sequence for Copying an Entire Disk



Explanation:

 The contents of the fixed disk on drive two (FROM-F2 in COPYPACK statement) is copied onto the removable disk on drive two (TO-R2).

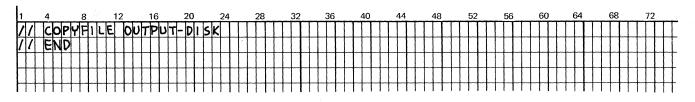
Figure 39. Utility Control Statements for Copying an Entire Disk

1		4			8			12	2		1	16			2	0			24	Ļ		2	28			3	2			36	;		4	10			4	4			48			Ę	52			56	3		(60			64	ŀ			68			7	2		
\overline{A}	έ	ŀ			Τ	Π	Τ	Τ							T	Τ	Τ							Τ			Τ	Τ								Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ									Ι						Τ			Γ			\Box		Τ		Ι	Τ
1	/.	L	40	١D		\$	ck	DP	Y	b	F	1																										Τ																Ι											Τ
1	1	F	1	LE		N	AN	16	-	C	0	P	Y	1	N,	I	JN	(I	T	-	F	1	,	PI	A		(-	- A	1	• ,	L	A	B	E	L	-	4	1s	Π	E	R						Τ	Τ						T		Γ									
1	/	F	11	LE		N	A	4E	-	C	0	P	Y	0	> (٨	1	Π	-	R	1	,	P	A		<-		32	.,	L	A	B	E	L	-	8/	1C	K	(U	P	2	T	R	A	C	K .	5-	5	ø	,	R	E	F A	1	N	-	P			\square					Τ
1	/	R	Ur	V					Γ																																													Τ		Ι				\square					
																																				Τ										T	T						T	Τ	Τ	Γ				Π					Τ
					Τ				Τ																				Γ							Τ	Τ	Τ										Τ					T	Τ	Ι	Ι				Π				Τ	Τ
Π	1			T	T		T	T	T	T				T	T	T	T	T	Ţ					T	T	1	T	T	T	T	T		T		T		T	T	T	1				T	T	T	T	T				1	T	T	T	T	T	T		П	T	T	Τ	Т	Т

Explanation:

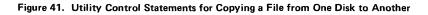
- Disk Copy/Dump program is loaded from fixed disk on drive one.
- Input file (OCL sequence):
 - 1. Name that identifies file on disk is MASTER (LABEL-MASTER).
 - 2. Disk that contains the file is the fixed disk on drive one (UNIT-F1). Its name is A1 (PACK-A1).
- Output file (OCL sequence):
 - 1. Name to be written on disk to identify the file is BACKUP (LABEL-BACKUP).
 - 2. Disk that is to contain the file is the removable disk on drive one (UNIT-R1). Its name is B2 (PACK-B2).
 - 3. The file is to be permanent (RETAIN-P).
 - 4. The length of the file is 50 tracks (TRACKS-50).

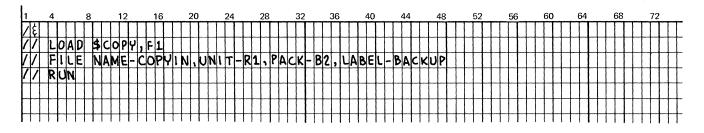
Figure 40. OCL Load Sequence for Copying a File from One Disk to Another



Explanation:

• The COPYFILE statement tells the program to create the output file using all the data from the input file. The output file is a copy of the input file.

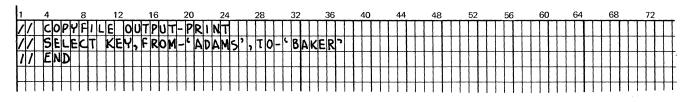




Explanation:

- Disk Copy/Dump program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.
- Input file (OCL sequence):
 - 1. Name that identifies the file on disk is BACKUP (LABEL-BACKUP).
 - 2. Disk that contains the file is the removable disk on drive one (UNIT-R1). Its name is B2 (PACK-B2).

Figure 42. OCL Load Sequence for Printing Part of a File

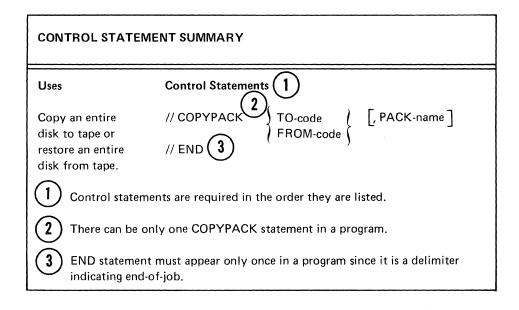


Explanation:

- The file is being printed (COPYFILE statement).
- The file is an indexed file. The part being printed is identified by the record keys from ADAMS to BAKER in the index (SELECT statement).

Figure 43. Utility Control Statements for Printing Part of a File

The Dump/Restore program (\$DCOPY) is a utility program used with the IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System control program. The \$DCOPY program allows the user to copy or dump the entire contents of a disk onto tape. The tape then serves as a back-up copy in case something happens to the information on the disk. The disk can at any time be restored to its original contents by transferring information back from the tape. Important disks, such as those containing libraries and permanent data files, are normally the ones copied. The tape contains a copy of the data on all tracks, including those on cylinder 0, except for the alternate and CE tracks.



PARAMETER SUN	/MARY
COPYPACK Staten	nent
Parameter	Meaning
FROM-code	Location of disk to be copied. Possible codes are F1, R1, F2, R2, D1, D2.
TO-code	Location of disk to receive the copy. Possible codes are F1, R1, F2, R2, D1, D2. See Figure for relationship of FROM and TO locations.
PACK-name	Name of the disk pack being used.

FROM and TO Parameters (COPYPACK)

The COPYPACK statement is used to copy information from disk to tape or from tape to disk.

The FROM parameter (FROM-code) indicates the location of the disk being copied. The TO parameter (TO-code) indicates the location of disk to receive the copy.

Codes for possible locations of FROM and TO parameters are:

Code Location

- F1 5444, fixed disk on drive one
- R1 5444, removable disk on drive one
- F2 5444, fixed disk on drive two
- R2 5444, removable disk on drive two
- D1 5445, disk drive one
- D2 5445, disk drive two

See Figure 44 for the relationship of FROM and TO locations.

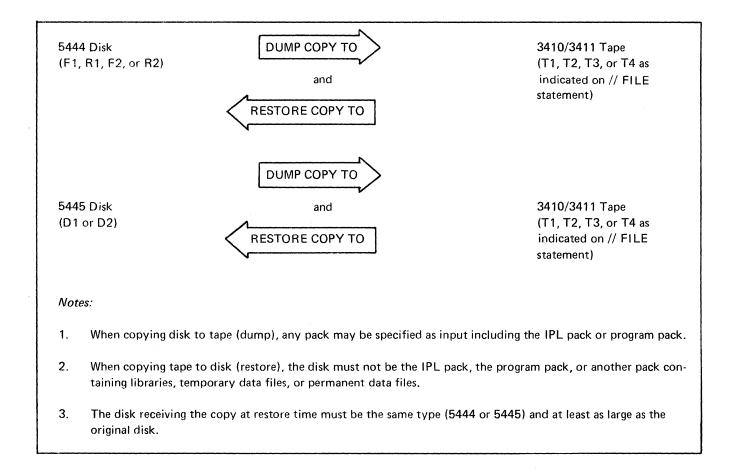


Figure 44. Relationship of Disk to Tape Drives when Using \$DCOPY

PACK Parameter (COPYPACK)

The pack name specified will be checked against the actual name of the pack. A halt occurs if they are not the same. If the parameter is not used, no checking will occur.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The **\$DCOPY** utility requires the following OCL statements:

// LOAD, \$DCOPY, code

- // FILE parameters
- // RUN

The code identifying the location of the **\$DCOPY** program can be one of the following:

Code Location

- R1 Removable disk on 5444 drive one
- F1 Fixed disk on 5444 drive one
- R2 Removable disk on 5444 drive two
- F2 Fixed disk on 5444 drive two

FILE Statement When Copying From Disk to Tape (Dump)

For 7-track tape:

// FILE NAME-BACKUP, UNIT-
$$\begin{cases} T1 \\ T2 \\ T3 \\ T4 \end{cases}$$
 [,REEL-
$$\begin{cases} nnnnn \\ NL \end{cases}$$
]

$$[,\mathsf{RETAIN} - \left\{ \frac{\mathsf{code}}{000} \right\}] [,\mathsf{BLKL} - \mathsf{block} \ \mathsf{length}]$$

[,RECL-record length] [,RECFM-F]

 $[,END- \left\{ \begin{array}{c} LEAVE \\ REWIND \\ UNLOAD \end{array} \right\}] [,DENSITY- \left\{ \begin{array}{c} 200 \\ 556 \\ 800 \end{array} \right\}]$

,CONVERT-ON[,PARITY-ODD] [,TRANSLATE-OFF]

For 9-track tape:
// FILE NAME-BACKUP,UNIT-
$$\begin{cases} T1 \\ T2 \\ T3 \\ T4 \end{cases}$$
 [,REEL- $\begin{cases} nnnnnn \\ NL \end{cases}$]

[,LABEL- { filename on tape 'character string' }] [,DATE- { mmddyy ddmmyy }] [,RETAIN- { code 000 }] [,BLKL-block length]

$$[, \text{RECL-record length}] [, \text{RECFM-F}]$$

$$[, \text{END-} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{LEAVE} \\ \text{REWIND} \\ \text{UNLOAD} \end{array} \right\}] [, \text{DENSITY-} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} 800 \\ \underline{1600} \end{array} \right\}]$$

FILE Statement When Copying From Tape to Disk (Restore)

For 7-track tape:

// FILE NAME-BACKUP, UNIT-
$$\begin{cases} T1 \\ T2 \\ T3 \\ T4 \\ \end{cases}$$
, REEL- $\begin{cases} nnnnnn \\ NL \\ \end{pmatrix}$

[,BLKL-block length] [,RECL-record length]

$$[, \text{RECFM-F}] [, \text{END-} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{LEAVE} \\ \text{REWIND} \\ \underline{\text{UNLOAD}} \end{array} \right\}] [, \text{DENSITY-} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} 200 \\ 556 \\ \underline{800} \end{array} \right\}]$$

,CONVERT-ON [,PARITY-ODD] [,TRANSLATE-OFF]

Note: The DENSITY parameter must be the same number as specified for the dump.

For 9-track tape:

// FILE NAME-BACKUP, UNIT-
$$\begin{cases} T1 \\ T2 \\ T3 \\ T4 \end{cases}$$
, REEL- $\begin{cases} nnnnnn \\ NL \end{cases}$

[,BLKL-block length] [,RECL-record length]

[,RECFM-F] [,END- { LEAVE REWIND UNLOAD }]

Statement Entry	Considerati	ions	
// LOAD			
\$DCOPY	Name of D	ump/Restore progra	m.
code	Location o	f disk containing Du	mp/Restore program. Can be R1, R2, F1, F2.
// FILE	_		
NAME-filename	Filename e	ntry must be BACK	UP.
UNIT-code	The UNIT T1, T2, T3		d. Code indicates tape unit. Allowable codes are:
REEL- { NL }	when copy nnnnnn NL	ing from tape to dis Volume is ident excluding comn Not labeled. Th an 80-byte reco	al when copying from disk to tape; it is required k. ified by coding a maximum of six characters, has, apostrophes, and blanks. he first record of an unlabeled tape must not be rd beginning with VOL1. ified, standard labels are assumed.
LABEL- { filename on tape }	The name	of the tape file as it	exists in the header label.
DATE-date	Format car	n be mmddyy or ddi	nmyy.
RETAIN-code	parameter		998) a file should be retained. RETAIN n copying from tape to disk. Default value e is 000.
BLKL-block length	Block leng	th and record length	must be equal and one of the following values:
RECL-record length		jical record number	ted is two bytes longer than specified since a two- is appended to the tape record. Defaults are
	Disk	Length in Bytes	Number of Tracks
	5444	<u>3072</u> 6144 12288	1/2 track 1 track 2 tracks
	5445	2560 5120 10240	1/2 track 1 track 2 tracks
RECFM-code (record format)	RECFM en	try must be fixed le	ngth (F).
END-position of tape after processing	END entri	es can be LEAVE, F	EWIND, or UNLOAD. Default is UNLOAD.
DENSITY-	9-track tap tion. If co	e. DENSITY paran	7-track tape; 1600 is the default value when using neter does not apply for the 9-track Restore opera- specified (or defaulted) for the 7-track Restore ur.

Parameter Summary (Con't)

Statement Entry	Considerations
CONVERT-ON	For 7-track tape, CONVERT-ON must be specified; CONVERT-ON must be used for \$DCOPY or data will be lost. Default is OFF. CONVERT-ON is not a valid parameter for 9-track tape.
PARITY-ODD	Should be specified if 7-track tape is used. PARITY-ODD must be used for \$DCOPY or data will be lost. Default is ODD.
TRANSLATE-OFF	Do not use TRANSLATE-ON since TRANSLATE-ON and CONVERT- ON are mutually exclusive (cannot specify both as ON). TRANSLATE- ON specifies that a 64-character subset of EBCDIC is being used; characters outside the subset (such as X'00') are lost — translated without error indication to something that is not meaningful. Default is OFF.
// RUN	_
For a detailed description o	f the OCL statements, see Part I, OCL Statements.

Messages for DUMP/RESTORE

Note: The following messages will be printed if the 1403 is the logging device and is not allocated to the other partition.

Message	Meaning
Copypack is complete	This message is printed when the specified pack has been dumped to tape or when the tape has been restored to disk.
n tracks not restored at $ \left\{\begin{array}{c} CC/SS\\ CCC/hh/rr \end{array}\right\} $	This message is printed when tracks have not been restored on the 5444 or 5445 disk. n = the number of tracks not res- tored. CC/SS is the disk address for a 5444 disk. CCC/hh/rr is the disk address for a 5445 disk.
nn tape errors occurred pack is not completely restored.	This message is printed when tape errors have occurred or the restored pack has missing data. nn = the number of tape errors. See previous messages for loca- tion of tracks not restored.

EXAMPLES

The parameters of the FILE statement vary depending upon whether the copy is to or from the tape.



FROM disk TO tape:

Only required parameters are included in this example. See OCL Considerations for listing of possible parameters.

OCL STATEMENTS

+++
Tal

2 FROM tape TO disk:

All possible parameters are included in this example.

1		4				1	8				1	12	2				16	3				20)			;	24				2	28				:	32	2			3	36				4	ю				4	4				48	3				52	2				56	5				60)			е	64	
	Ę			Ι	Τ				Γ	Τ				T			Γ	Ţ					Γ	T				Γ	Γ	Τ	Τ		Γ	T	Τ	Ι			Γ	Τ				Γ	Τ	Ι			Γ	Τ	Τ					Γ	Τ	T				Γ	T	Ι	٦		Γ	Τ	Ι					T	Τ		Γ
$\overline{\Lambda}$	1	L	0	A	V	2		\$	ſ	K	3	0	4	7	Y		f	1				Γ	Ι	T	T				Γ	T	T		Γ	T	Τ				Γ	T				Τ		T			Τ	T						Γ	T	T					I											T	T		Γ
1	1	F	1	L		2		N	1	V	M	e	Γ	-	B	Á	C		\langle	u	P	5	C	1	V	1	T	-	17	Ċ	2	,	F	de		E	L	-	h	Y	4	ρ	E		2		L	A	E	1	Ę	4	-	K	E	E	4	2	5		D	4	ſ	T	E	-	R	1	3	L	L	7	3	3	,		Γ
1	1			Ι	T	B	1	K	L		-	6	1		4	4	4,	1	2	E	C	i	-	- (5	L	4	4	١,	1	2	e	k	F	-	1	-	F	١,	1	E	N	C	-	-	u	N	L	C			D	,	c	0	N	T	V	E	R	٦	-	·k	2	N			T					Γ	Τ	Τ	Γ	Γ
\mathbb{Z}	1			Ι	1	7	Ą	R	1	F	ſ	у	ŀ		S	0	Ċ			T	R	A	1	(5	L	A	T		ŀ	-	0	F	1	F				ľ	Ι	Ι			Γ	Ι				Γ	Τ	Τ					Γ	Τ	T				Γ	Τ			-							Γ	T			Γ
1	1	R	U		ł																																																																								Γ
					T					Ţ			Γ	T	_									Ι					Γ	T				T										T					Γ	T						Γ	Ι					Ι											Γ		Τ		Г

Explanation:

- The Dump/Restore program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.
- The file name is always BACKUP.
- Tape unit two contains the disk copy.
- Tape unit two is a 7-track drive.

- TAPE2 is the label of the tape volume.
- KEEP5 is used in the header label.
- The date is March 11, 1973.
- Block and record lengths are 6144 and indicate that the disk device is a 5444.
- CONVERT-ON indicates data conversion.
- END, PARITY, and TRANSLATE parameters given are the same as the default values.

OCL STATEMENTS

- The Dump/Restore program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

- The file name is always BACKUP.

Explanation:

- The copy will go to tape unit two.
- Tape unit two is a 9-track drive.

The following control statements show the use of all possible parameters.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	t	0	11	12	13	1	41	5	6	17	18	19	20) 2	12	2 :	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	3	2 3:	33	13	53	63	73	36	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	5 41	64	7 48	3 49
1	1		2	0	F	∕∖	A	0	٨	5	1	1		C	C	2	N		-	F	1		F	N	V	2	2	-		1	V	F	r	1	Τ		Τ	Т	Τ	Т										Τ	T	Г	
Ŀť	4	-	1	-	÷	Ŧ	4	-	n	Μ	4	4		ŀ	1	Ŧ	4	4	-		ŀ	Þ	╇	4	4	4		-	•	1	P		1	ļ-	1-	+	÷	╀	╋	╋	+	-		-			┝		╋	╋	+-	╀	
L	/		E	n	L)	1				L													1							L			İ.				L		L							L.						
П						Т					Τ					Т							Т		Τ											Т		Г	T	Т										Τ		Γ	T
++	+	-	Η		╉	╋	+	-	-	⊢	+	+	-	⊢	t	+	+	-			-	╀	+	+	-+	-1	-	-1		-	⊢	+	+	+-	╀	+-	+	ł	+	+	+	-+					⊢	⊢	+	+-	+	+	+

Î

- The COPYPACK statement tells the program to copy an entire disk to tape.
- The copy is from the fixed disk on drive one.
- FIXED 1 is the name of the pack being used. The program will verify that the specified pack is mounted.

Note: These utility control statements would be used with the OCL shown in example 1.

LIBRARY MAINTENANCE PROGRAM-\$MAINT

The Library Maintenance program has five functions:

Function	Meaning
Allocate	Create (reserve space for), delete, re-organize, and change the sizes of libraries.
Сору	Place entries in, and display the contents of, libraries.
Delete	Delete library entries.
Modify	Modify source library entries.
Rename	Change the names of library entries.

The control statements you must supply depend on the function you are using.

LIBRARY DESCRIPTION

The *source library* is an area on disk for storing procedures and source statements. *Procedures* are groups of OCL statements used to load programs. The statements can be followed by input data for the programs. (Procedures for utility programs can, for example, contain utility control statements.) *Source statements* are sets of data, the most common of which are RPG II source programs and Disk Sort sequence specifications.

The object library is an area on disk for storing object programs and routines. Object programs are programs and subroutines in such a form that they can be loaded for execution. (They are sometimes called executable object programs.) Routines are programs and subroutines that need to be link-edited into object programs before they can be loaded for execution. (They are sometimes called nonexecutable object programs.)

Location of Libraries on Disk

Libraries can be located anywhere on disk. However, the location of a source library with respect to an object library is always the same:

	User Area	Source Library	Object Library	User Area
♦ Tra	nck O		Upj	per Boundary

The boundaries of a source library are fixed. They can be changed only by the allocate function of the Library Maintenance program. The upper boundary of an object library, however, can be moved as additional space is needed when entries are placed in the library. This happens only if space is available following the library and if the entries being placed beyond the normal boundary are *not* permanent entries.

Organization of Library Entries

Object Library

Entries are stored in the object library serially; that is, a 20-sector program occupies 20 consecutive sectors. Temporary entries follow all permanent entries in the object library.

If necessary, the upper boundary is changed to allow more space for temporary entries. The upper boundary of the library is extended to the end of the pack or to the first temporary or permanent file, allowing the maximum amount of space for the temporary library entry. At the successful completion of the copy, the upper boundary is returned to its original position or to the end of the last temporary entry. If the copy was not completed successfully, the upper boundary may remain extended. When a permanent entry is placed in the library or the library is reorganized, all temporary entries are deleted and the upper boundary returns to its original location. Permanent entries cannot exceed the original upper boundary.

Gaps can occur in the object library when an entry is deleted. The associated directory entries will point to these gaps. When the Library Maintenance program places a new entry in the library, it searches the directory for a gap that has the same number of sectors, or the fewest number of sectors over the number required by the new entry. If the entry is smaller than the gap, the last part of the gap will not be pointed to by a directory entry. Since this gap has no directory entry, it will not be used until the library is reorganized.

If the number of unusable sectors becomes excessive, the library should be reorganized. In reorganizing entries, the Library Maintenance program deletes temporary entries and shifts entries so that gaps do not appear between them. This makes more sectors available for use.

Source Library

The source library differs from the object library in that entries within the source library need not be stored in consecutive sectors. An entry can be stored in many widely separated sectors with each sector pointing to the sector that contains the next part of the entry. When an entry is placed in the source library, it is placed in as many sectors as required regardless of where the sectors are located within the library.

The boundary of the source library cannot be expanded; therefore, an entry must fit within the available library space. To provide as much space as possible within the prescribed limits of the source library, the system compresses entries. That is, all duplicate characters and blanks are removed from entries. Later, if the entries are printed or punched, the duplicate characters and blanks are re-inserted.

When the size of the source library is changed or the source library is reorganized, all temporary entries are deleted.

Library Directories

The program creates a separate directory for each library. Every library entry has a corresponding entry in its library directory. The directory entry contains such information as the name and location of the library entry. The first character of a directory name must be an alphabetic character. Maximum length is six characters. The program also creates a system directory, which contains information about the size and available space in libraries and their directories.

Organization of this Section

The five functions of the Library Maintenance programs are described separately. Every description contains the following:

- 1. List of specific uses.
- 2. Control statement summary indicating the form of control statement needed for each use.
- 3. Parameter descriptions explaining in detail, the contents and meanings of the parameters.
- 4. Function descriptions explaining the details of each function.

Following the function descriptions are:

- 1. OCL considerations
- 2. Examples

ALLOCATE FUNCTION

A	LLOCATE USES
•	Create (reserve space for) libraries.
•	Change the sizes of libraries.
•	Delete libraries.

• Reorganize libraries.

ALLOCATE CON	ITROL STATEMENT SUMM	ARY
// ALLOCATE T	O-code,SOURCE- R	,OBJECT- $\begin{cases} number \\ R \end{cases}$,SYSTEM- $\begin{cases} NO \\ YES \end{cases}$,DIRSIZE-number,WORK-code
	Use	Parameter Needed
	Create	TO-code,SOURCE-number,WORK-code
Source	Change Size	TO-code,SOURCE-number,WORK-code
Library	Delete	TO-code,SOURCE-0
	Reorganize	TO-code,SOURCE-R,WORK-code
	Create	TO-code,OBJECT-number,SYSTEM- {NO } YES
Object Library	Change Size	TO-code,OBJECT-number,WORK-code
Library	Delete	TO-code,OBJECT-0
	Reorganize	TO-code,OBJECT-R,WORK-code
library and ch If you are ind only one WOI The WORK p	nanging the size of the object l licating uses for both libraries, RK parameter if both uses req	use only one TO parameter. (The libraries must be on the same disk.) Also, use uire a WORK parameter. disk contains an object library that you are not deleting.

Library Maintenance Allocate Restrictions

This program has restrictions and operating conditions that the user must be aware of when maintaining libraries.

Allocation of Disk Space

The Library Maintenance program allocates disk space for each of the following functions:

- Allocate a library
- Increase the size of a library
- Reorganize a library
- Dynamically extend an object library to copy temporary entries to the library
- Sort a directory before it is printed
- Modify a source library entry

The space allocated by the program is the first contiguous space large enough for the function to be performed. The Library Maintenance program will use as much space as is available to the end of the pack or to the first temporary or permanent data file, removing all scratch files in this area. If within a single load of the program, there are functions performed which require more than four disk areas to be allocated, a halt will occur. The Library Maintenance program must be reloaded to continue.

Removing Temporary Entries

When a library is reorganized, its size is changed, or it is moved, all temporary entries in that library are deleted. This applies to both the source and object libraries.

Library Restrictions

The Allocate function cannot reference the libraries on the pack from which the Library Maintenance Program or the system was loaded. For example, if the system was loaded (IPL) from F1 and the Library Maintenance Program was loaded from R1, the source or object libraries on F1 and R1 cannot be referenced on an ALLOCATE statement.

Moving the Object Library

When allocating or reallocating the source library on a pack that contains an object library, the object library is reorganized and all temporary entries are deleted.

TO-code	Location of disk Possible codes an and F2.	•
SOURCE-number (no source library on disk)	Create a source I indicates the nur you want to assi	
SOURCE-number (source library already on disk)	Delete or change source library. (number:	
	Number	Use
	0	Delete
	Any number but zero	Change size
SOURCE-R	Reorganize the s	source library.
OBJECT-number (no object library on disk)	Create an object indicates the nur you want to assi	
OBJECT-number (object library already on disk)	Delete or change object library. number:	
	Number	Use
	0	Delete
	Any number but zero	Change size
OBJECT-R	Reorganize the	object library.
DIRSIZE-number	Number of tracl the directory wi allocating, or re- object library.	hen creating, re-
SYSTEM-NO	Do not create a area. This will b	scheduler work be a program pack
SYSTEM-YES	Create a schedu This will be a sy	
WORK-code	the program can	c containing space a use as a work are re R1, F1, R2, or

TO Parameter

The TO parameter (TO-code) indicates the location of the disk that contains, or will contain, the library. If the program use involves both libraries, the libraries must be on the same disk. The TO parameter cannot be the same unit from which the Library Maintenance program or system is loaded.

Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

SOURCE and OBJECT Parameters

These parameters identify library uses:

Parameter	Use	
SOURCE-number OBJECT-number (number is not zero)	 If the disk contains no library, parameter means create a library. Number is the number of tracks you want to assign to the library. 	Creat
	• If the disk contains a library, parameter means change the library size. Number is the number of tracks you want to assign to the library.	
SOURCE-0 OBJECT-0	Delete the library.	
SOURCE-R OBJECT-R	Reorganize the library.	

DIRSIZE Parameter

The DIRSIZE parameter allows the user to specify the size of the object library directory. The number of tracks specified (1-9), overrides the SYSTEM parameter in determining directory size. Each track can contain 288 directory entries. One entry is needed for the directory, so the formula for the number of entries in a directory is (t x 288)-1, where t is the number of tracks. If the DIRSIZE parameter is omitted, the SYSTEM parameter determines the directory size.

SYSTEM Parameter

The SYSTEM parameter applies when creating, changing the size of and reorganizing object libraries. It tells the program whether you intend to include system programs in the library. If system programs are to be included, a scheduler work area must be assigned and the directory must be large enough for all those system programs necessary for program loading and running (minimum system), and those necessary for generating and maintaining a system.

Space for the scheduler work area is assigned immediately preceding the object library. If the disk contains a source library, the work area is between the source and object libraries. For information about the size of the scheduler work area, see *Scheduler Work Area Size*.

The following charts show the results of coding the SYSTEM parameter for different allocate users.

Creating an Object Library

Parameter	Scheduler Work Area	Directory Size*
SYSTEM-YES	Created	Three Tracks
SYSTEM-NO	Not Created	One Track
not coded	Not Created	One Track

*The directory size is overridden if the DIRSIZE parameter is coded.

Changing the Size of or Reorganizing an Object Library **That Contains System Programs**

Parameter	Scheduler Work Area	Directory Size*
SYSTEM-YES	Retained	Not Changed
SYSTEM-NO	Removed	Not Changed
not coded	Retained	Not Changed

*The directory size is overridden if the DIRSIZE parameter is coded.

Changing the Size of or Reorganizing an Object Library That Does Not Contain System Programs

Parameter	Scheduler Work Area	Directory Size*
SYSTEM-YES	Created	Not Changed
SYSTEM-NO	Not Created	Not Changed
not coded	Not Created	Not Changed

*The directory size is overridden if the DIRSIZE parameter is coded.

WORK Parameter

The WORK parameter (WORK-code) indicates the location of the disk that contains a work area. Library entries are temporarily stored in the work area while the program moves and reorganizes libraries.

Codes for the possible disk locations are as follows:

Code	Location
R1	Removable disk on drive 1.
F1	Fixed disk on drive 1.
R2	Removable disk on drive 2.
F2	Fixed disk on drive 2.

When the WORK parameter is coded on an ALLO-CATE statement, an additional allocation of disk space may result (see Allocation of Disk Space).

Size of the Work Area

The work area must be large enough to hold the permanent entries of the source library, object library, or both libraries depending on the program use. If you are combining uses, such as changing the sizes of both libraries, the work area must be large enough to hold the contents of both libraries.

Use	Contents of Work Area
Create a source library (disk con- tains an object library).	Object library.
Change source library size (disk contains an ob- ject library).	Source library and object library.
Change source library size (disk doesn't contain an object library).	Source library.
Reorganize source library	Source library
Change object library size.	Object library, if not compress in place. (see <i>compress in place.)</i>
Reorganize object library.	Object library, if not compress in place.

Location of Work Area on Disk

The program uses the first available disk area large enough to hold the library, or libraries.

Location of Disk Containing the Work Area

The work area can be on either disk on either drive. However, it cannot be the same disk as the one you specified in the TO parameter. The only requirement is that the disk must have an available area large enough for the work area. If your system has two disk drives, the program works faster if the disk containing the libraries is on a different drive than the disk containing the work area.

Using the Allocate Function

Creating a Source Library (SOURCE-number)

Source Library Size

- Minimum: One track.
- Maximum: Number of tracks in the available area.
- Regardless of the number of tracks you specify, the first two sectors of the first track are assigned to the library directory. Additional sectors are used as needed for the directory.

Placement of Source Library (Disk With an Object Library)

- The source library must immediately precede the object library. A disk area large enough for the source library must follow the object library because the program moves the object library to make room for the source library (Figure 45). To do this, it needs a work area. (See WORK parameter) The object library is reorganized and all temporary entries are deleted.
- If you allocate a source library after deleting it, the program automatically moves the object library to make room for the source library. The starting location of the source library is the previous starting location of the object library.

Disk Space Before Creating Source Library

	Object Library (30 tracks)	Available Space (15 tracks	Customer Files	
0-7		← 38-52 → cks		

Disk Space After Creating Source Library

	Source Library (5 tracks)	Object Library (30 tracks)	Available Space (10 tracks)	Customer Files	
0-7	8-12		← 43-52 →		

Figure 45. Moving Object Library to Insert Source Library

Placement of the Source Library (Disk Without an Object Library). The program assigns the source library to the first available disk area large enough for the library.

If you allocate a source library after deleting it, the source library is assigned the same way.

Changing the Size of a Source Library

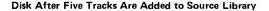
Any time the program changes the source library size, it reorganizes both the source and object libraries and deletes all temporary entries. (See *Reorganizing a Source Library.*) To do this, it needs a work area. (See *WORK parameter.*)

Making the Source Library Larger

- If the disk contains an object library space must be available immediately following the object library. The program moves the object library to make tracks available at the end of the source library (Figure 46).
- If the disk does not contain an object library, space must be available immediately following the source library.

Disk Before Tracks Are Added to Source Library

(_ibrary 10 tracks)	Object Library (30 tracks)	Space (15 tracks)	Files
0-7	8-17	← 18-47 →	48-62	



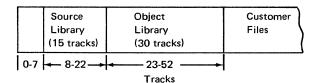
	Source Library (15 tracks)	Object Library (30 tracks)	Available Space (10 tracks)	Customer Files	$\left\langle \right\rangle$
0-7	8-22	← 23-52 → Track			

Figure 46. Increasing Source Library Size

Making the Source Library Smaller

- If the disk contains an object library, the program moves the end location of the source library to make the library smaller. The object library is moved and space becomes available following the object library (Figure 47).
- If the disk does not contain an object library, the program moves the end location of the source library to make the source library smaller.

Disk Before Source-Library Size Was Decreased



Disk After Five Tracks Were Taken From Source Library

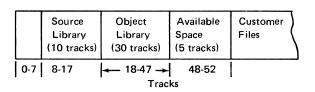


Figure 47. Decreasing Source Library Size

Deleting a Source Library (SOURCE-0)

The program makes the disk area occupied by the source library available for other use (disk files) (Figure 48).

Disk Before Source Library Deleted

	Source Library (15 tracks)	Object Library (30 tracks)	Customer Files	
0-7	← 8-22 →	← 23-52 →		

Disk After Source Library Deleted

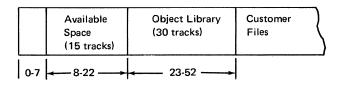


Figure 48. Deleting Source Library

Reorganizing a Source Library (SOURCE-R)

Reason for Reorganizing the Library. Areas from which source library entries are deleted are completely reused for new entries. If an entry exceeds the space in such an area, the program puts as much of the entry as will fit in the area and continues the entry in the next available area. In this way, the program efficiently uses library space. This can, however, decrease the speed at which those entries can be read from the library. Therefore, if you frequently add and delete source library entries, you should reorganize your source library periodically.

Reorganizing the Library. The program relocates entries so that no entry is started in one area and continued in another. All temporary entries are deleted. The program needs a work area. (See WORK parameter.)

Creating an Object Library (OBJECT-number)

Object Library Size

- Minimum: Three tracks including the directory tracks.
- Maximum: Number of tracks in available area.
- Library Directory: The first three tracks in the library are reserved for the library directory if the library is to contain system programs; otherwise, only the first track is used. If the DIRSIZE parameter is entered, the directory size specified is used.

Scheduler Work Area: If the library is to contain • system programs, the space available on the pack must be large enough to contain a work area for the Scheduler program (one of the system programs). The work space is not included in the number you specify in the OBJECT parameter; the space is calculated and assigned by the Library Maintenance program. The amount of space needed depends on whether DPF (Dual Programming Feature) and/or the inquiry capability is generated in the supervisor. For non-DPF systems, two tracks are needed; for DPF systems, four tracks are needed. The inquiry and checkpoint/restart features require additional tracks for a Roll-in/Roll-out area. The number of tracks needed depends on the main storage size of the system.

Main Storage Size	Roll-in/Roll-out Tracks
12K	4
16K	5
24K	6
32K	8
48K	10
64K	13

Placement of Object Library (Disk With a Source Library). Space for the object library must be available immediately following the source library.

Placement of Object Library (Disk Without a Source Library). The program assigns the object library to the first available disk area that is large enough.

Changing the Size of an Object Library (OBJECT-number)

- Making the Library Larger. The number of tracks you want to add must be available immediately following the object library. The program assigns the additional tracks to the library. (The starting location of the library remains unchanged.)
- Making the Library Smaller. The program moves the end location of the object library to decrease the library size. Tracks, therefore, become available following the library.

Reorganizing the Library. Any time the program changes the library size it also reorganizes the library and deletes all temporary entries. (See *Reorganizing an Object Library.*) A work area is needed if other functions are being performed with the reorganization. (See *WORK parameter.*) If not, a work area is not used. (See *Compress in Place.*)

Deleting an Object Library (OBJECT-0)

The program makes the disk area occupied by the object library (and the scheduler work area if this was a system pack) available for other use.

Reorganizing an Object Library (OBJECT-R)

Gaps can occur between object library entries when you add and delete entries. By reorganizing the library, these gaps are removed. When the library is reorganized, all temporary entries are deleted. A work area is needed if other functions are being performed with the reorganization. (See WORK parameter.) If not, a work area is not used. (See Compress in Place.)

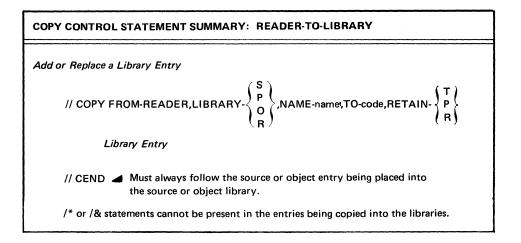
Compress in Place (OBJECT - {R number })

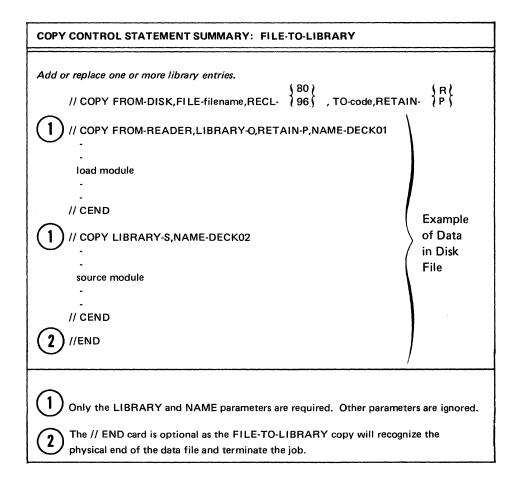
If an object library is to be reorganized, or the size is to be changed and this is the only function to be performed, the object library will be compressed in place. This means that the library will be reorganized with all gaps removed and all temporary entries deleted without using a work area. The WORK parameter will be ignored if supplied.

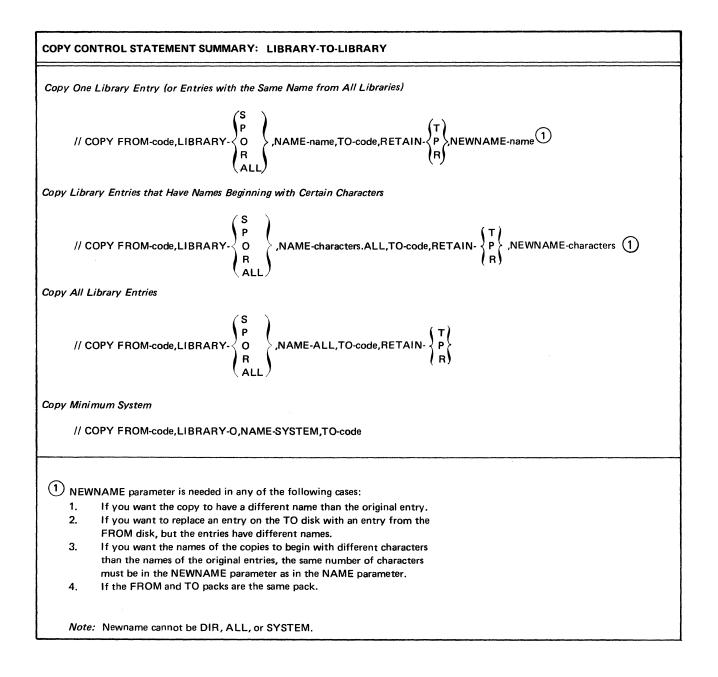
If, however, a source library function is to be performed or if the directory size (DIRSIZE parameter) or the pack type (SYSTEM parameter) is to be changed in conjunction with an object library function, a work area will be used. (See WORK parameter.) Compress in place allows the user with a single-spindle or half-capacity 5444 disk drive to reorganize the object library.

COPY FUNCTION

OPY USES	
Reader-to-Library	 Add or replace a library entry. The reader is the system input device, which can be either the keyboard or a card reader.
File-to-Library	 Add or replace one or more library entries. A 5444 disk file is the input. Each entry in the file must have a // COPY statement and a // CEND statement. The file is opened and accessed consecutively.
	• Copy one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
	Copy library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
Library-to-Library	 Copy all library entries.
	• Copy minimum system.
	• Print one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
	• Print library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
	Print all library entries of a certain type.
Library-to-Printer	• Print directory entries for library entries of a certain type.
	• Print entries from all directories including system directory.
	• Print system directory only.
	• Punch one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
Library-to-Card	• Punch library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
	Punch all library entries of a certain type.
Library to Printor	• Print and punch one library entry (or those entries with the same name from all libraries).
Library-to-Printer and-Card	• Print and punch library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
	Print and punch all temporary or permanent library entries of a certain type.







COPY CONTROL STATEMENT SUMMARY: LIBRARY-TO-PRINTER-AND/OR-CARD

Print and/or Punch One Library Entry (or Entries with the Same Name from All Libraries)

 $// \text{COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \begin{cases} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{pmatrix}, \text{NAME-name, TO-} \begin{cases} \text{PUNCH} \\ \text{PRINT} \\ \text{PRTPCH} \end{cases}$

Print and/or Punch Temporary and Permanent Library Entries that Have Names Beginning with Certain Characters

$$// \text{COPY FROM-code, LIBRARY-} \begin{cases} S \\ P \\ O \\ R \\ ALL \end{cases}, \text{NAME-characters, ALL, TO-} \begin{cases} \text{PUNCH} \\ \text{PRINT} \\ \text{PRTPCH} \end{cases}$$

Print and/or Punch All Temporary and Permanent Library Entries of a Certain Type

// COPY FROM-code,LIBRARY-
$$\begin{cases} S \\ P \\ O \\ B \end{cases}$$
, NAME-ALL, TO-
$$\begin{cases} PUNCH \\ PRINT \\ PRTPCH \end{cases}$$

Print Directory Entries for Library Entries of a Certain Type

// COPY FROM-code,LIBRARY-
$$\begin{cases} S \\ P \\ O \\ B \\ \end{cases}$$
,NAME-DIR,TO-PRINT

Print Entries from All Directories Including System Directory

// COPY FROM-code,LIBRARY-ALL,NAME-DIR,TO-PRINT

Print System Directory Entries Only

// COPY FROM-code,LIBRARY-SYSTEM,NAME-DIR,TO-PRINT

Print Directory Entries, Omitting Selected Entries

// COPY FROM-code,LIBRARY-

> ,NAME-DIR,TO-PRINT,OMIT-

name

characters.ALL

FROM-READER	Entry to be placed in library is to be read from system input device, which can be a keyboard or card reader.				
FROM-code	Location of disk containing library entries being copied, printed, or punched. Possible location codes are:				
	Code	Meaning			
	R1	Removable disk on drive one			
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one			
	R2	Removable disk on drive two			
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two			
FROM-DISK		entries to be placed into a library or libraries reside in a disk file. must be described by an OCL FILE statement.			
FILE-filename		ibrary copy, this parameter is needed to identify the file on disk. must match the filename on the OCL FILE statement.			
{ 80 } RECL-	For a file-to-library copy, this parameter gives the size of the disk records. Only 80 or 96 column card image records (unblocked) are allowed. If this parameter is omitted, 96 is assumed.				
	Type of libra	ry entries involved in copy use. Possible codes are:			
(R)	Code	Meaning			
	S	Source statements (source library)			
	Р	OCL procedures (source library)			
	ο	Object programs (object library)			
	R	Routines (object library)			
LIBRARY-ALL	All types of entries (S, P, O, and R) from both libraries are involved in copy use.				
LIBRARY-SYSTEM	Only system	directory entries are being printed.			
NAME- ALL ALL ALL		ry entries on the FROM pack, of the type indicated in LIBRARY wolved in copy use. Possible information is:			
	Information	Meaning			
	name	Name of the library entry involved.			
	characters.A	LL Only those entries beginning with the indicated characters. The names of the copies and original entries will be the same unless you use a NEWNAME parameter (NEWNAME- characters). (You can use up to five characters.)			
	ALL	All entries. (The type indicated in LIBRARY parameter. To copy a system which you can IPL, specify LIBRARY- ALL and NAME-ALL.)			

NAME-SYSTEM	copy use. T load and ru	Only system programs that make up the minimum system are involved in the copy use. The minimum system is made up of system programs necessary to load and run programs. System programs necessary to generate and maintain the system are not included.		
NAME-DIR	parameter a	Directory entries for all library entries of the type indicated in the LIBRARY parameter are involved in the copy use. If the LIBRARY parameter is LIBRARY-ALL, system directory entries are also printed.		
NAME-\$cc.ALL RETAIN- { P }	The IBM program with the name beginning with the indicated characters (\$cc) is involved in the copy use. For example, \$MA.ALL means the Library Maintenance program (\$MAINT). Adding Entry to Library. RETAIN gives designation of the TO entry:			
(R)	Code	Meaning		
	т	Temporary		
	P or R	Permanent		
	· •	<i>Existing Library Entry</i> . RETAIN gives designation of the TO entry and Im whether to halt before replacing entry:		
	Code	Meaning		
	т	Temporary designation. Halt before replacing entry.		
	Р	Permanent designation. Halt before replacing entry.		
	R	Permanent designation. Do not halt before replacing entry.		
	Printing or	Punching Entries. The RETAIN parameter is ignored.		
TO-code	Location of disk that is to contain the copies of the entries:			
	Code	Meaning		
	R1	Removable disk on drive one		
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one		
	R2	Removable disk on drive two		
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two		
TO-PRINT	Entries are	being printed.		
TO-PUNCH	Entries are	being punched.		
TO-PRTPCH	Entries are	Entries are being printed and punched.		
NEWNAME-name	disk. If you	Name you want used on the TO disk to identify the entries being put on that disk. If you omit this parameter, the program uses the NAME parameter in naming the entries.		
NEWNAME-characters	on TO disk. parameter (Beginning characters you want to use in names identifying entries being put on TO disk. You must use the same number of characters as in the NAME parameter (NAME-characters.ALL). If you omit this parameter, the program uses the NAME parameter in naming the entries.		
OMIT-name	When print	ing directory entries, omit the entry specified by name.		
OMIT-characters.ALL	When print characters.	When printing directory entries, omit all entries with these beginning characters.		

Library Directories

Source and Object Library Directories

- The source and object libraries have separate library directories. Every library entry has a corresponding entry in its library directory. The directory entry contains such information as the name and location of the library entry (see Figures 49-51).
- The Library Maintenance program makes entries in the directories when it puts entries in the libraries.

System Directory

- Every disk that contains libraries contains a system directory. The system directory contains information about the sizes of and available space in libraries and their directories (see Figures 49-51).
- The Library Maintenance program creates and maintains the system directory.

Naming Library Entries

- Characters to Use. Use any combination of System/3 characters except blanks, commas, quotes, and periods. (Appendix A lists the characters.) The names of all IBM programs begin with a dollar sign (\$). Therefore, to avoid possible duplication, do not use a dollar sign as the first character in the names you use for your entries. The first character must be alphabetic.
- Length of Name. The name can be from one to six characters long.
- Restricted Names. Do not use the names ALL, DIR, and SYSTEM. They have special meanings in the NAME and NEWNAME parameters.

Entries with the Same Name. For each of the two physical libraries, source and object, there are two types of entries. The source library has type P and type S entries. The object library has type O and type R entries. Entries of the same type cannot have the same name, but entries of different types may. For example, two procedures in a source library cannot have the same name, but a procedure and a set of source statements can.

Retain Types

Temporary Entries

- Temporary entries are entries you do not intend to keep in your libraries. They are normally used only once or a few times over a short period.
- In the object library, temporary entries are placed together following the permanent entries. Any time a permanent entry is added to the library, all temporary entries are deleted. Temporary entries are also deleted when you replace one permanent entry with another.
- In the source library, temporary and permanent entries can be in any order. One entry is placed after another regardless of their designations. Temporary entries, therefore, are not automatically deleted every time you add a permanent entry. However, when the source library is reallocated or reorganized, only permanent entries will remain.
- You can use temporary entries as often as you like until they are deleted.
- A temporary entry cannot replace a permanent entry.

Permanent Entries

- Permanent entries are entries you intend to keep in your libraries. They are normally entries you use often or at regular intervals (once a week, once a month, and so on).
- The program will not delete permanent entries unless you use the delete function of Library Maintenance to delete them, or the allocate function to delete the entire library.

Using the Copy Function

Reader-to-Library

- Input. The program reads one library entry. It can be any one of the following types:
 - 1. Source statements
 - 2. Procedure
 - 3. Object program
 - 4. Routine

The entry is read from the system input device, which is normally the primary hopper of the MFCU. The operator can, however, change the system input device by using the OCL READER statement.

The header card on an object deck (H in column 1) contains the date the deck was punched. This date is in columns 58-63 and is in the format of the system date, either mmddyy or ddmmyy.

Output

- Blanks and duplicate characters are removed from source statements and procedures before they are put in the source library. The program does not check them for errors.
- Object programs and routines are placed in the object library.

Adding Entries

• The program can add a new entry to a library. The name of the entry is taken from the NAME parameter. See Naming Library Entries for valid names. The RETAIN parameter specifies whether the entry will be temporary or permanent. If the RETAIN parameter is omitted, RETAIN-T is assumed. (see Retain Types)

Replacing Existing Entries

- The program can replace an existing library entry with the entry you are putting in the library. The RETAIN parameter specifies the new retain type. If the RETAIN parameter is omitted, RETAIN-T is assumed. A temporary entry cannot replace a permanent entry.
- The program can halt before replacing an existing entry. Whether it does depends on the RETAIN parameter you use. (see *RETAIN parameter*)

• Before the new entry is added, the duplicate entry is deleted. Additional library space is not needed unless the new entry is larger than the old one.

File-to-Library

Input. The disk file can contain one or more library entires. The entries must be in the format put out by the library-to-card function or by the linkage editor. The // COPY statement at the beginning of each entry contains the name of the entry and the type of library (S,P,O,R). A // CEND statement must follow each entry in the file.

The disk file must be a sequential 5444 file and be defined by a FILE statement in the OCL for the Library Maintenance program.

Output. The output from the file-to-library function is the same as for the reader-to-library function except that temporary entries are not allowed.

Library-to-Library

- Input. The program can copy one or more library entries from one disk to another. The types of entries can be:
 - 1. Source statements
 - 2. Procedures
 - 3. Object programs
 - 4. Routines
 - 5. All the preceding types
 - 6. Minimum system

The NAME and LIBRARY parameters specify which entries to copy.

Output

- The entries, regardless of their type, are copied from one disk to the other without change. However, if all library entries are copied (LIBRARY-ALL, NAME-ALL), the object library is reorganized and temporary entries become permanent entries in both the source and object libraries.
- Entries can be copied and renamed on the same disk by using the NEWNAME parameter. (see NEWNAME parameter and Naming Library Entries)
- If you are copying a minimum system or all of the types (LIBRARY-ALL, NAME-ALL), the object library on the disk you specify in the TO parameter must be empty. That is, it cannot contain any entries or deleted entries. When LIBRARY-ALL, NAME-ALL is specified and the FROM disk is a system pack, then the TO disk will be a system pack.
- The RETAIN parameter specifies whether the entries will be temporary or permanent. If the RETAIN parameter is omitted, RETAIN-T is assumed. When the parameters LIBRARY-ALL and NAME-ALL or LIBRARY-O and NAME-SYSTEM are used, RETAIN-P is assumed and RETAIN-T is invalid.

Adding Entries

- You can omit the NEWNAME parameter. If you do, the name used for the copy is taken from the NAME parameter. (The copy will have the same name as the original entry.)
- If NAME-ALL is specified, the names by which the entries are identified on the FROM disk are also used on the TO disk to identify the entries.

Replacing Existing Entries

- The program can replace existing entries with the entries you are putting in the library. If the entry you are copying (the entry on the disk you identify in the FROM parameter) has the same name as the entry you are replacing (the entry on the disk you identify in the TO parameter), you must omit the NEWNAME parameter because the NEWNAME parameter cannot be the same as the NAME parameter. If the names are not the same, you must use the NEWNAME parameter to give the name of the entry being replaced.
- The program can halt before replacing an existing entry. Whether it does depends on the RETAIN parameter. (See *RETAIN parameter.*)
- A temporary entry cannot replace a permanent entry.

Library-to-Printer and/or Card

Types of Entries that Can Be Printed or Punched

- The program can print or punch one or more library entries. They can be any one of the following types:
 - 1. Source statements
 - 2. Procedures
 - 3. Object programs
 - 4. Routines
 - 5. All of the preceding types (limited to entries having the same name and entries beginning with the same characters)
- The program can print (but not punch) the following types of directory entries:
 - 1. Source statements
 - 2. Procedures
 - 3. Object programs
 - 4. Routines
 - 5. System directory
 - 6. All of the preceding types

The program will sort directory names before printing them only if there is available work space on the FROM pack. This causes an allocation of disk space. (See *Allocation of Disk Space.*)

Printed or Punched Library Entries

- Blanks and duplicate characters are reinserted into source statements and procedures to make them readable.
- Object programs and routines are printed and punched as they exist in the library.

Printout of Directory Entries

- Source library directory (Figure 49)
- Object library directory (Figure 50)
- System directory (Figure 51)

PRINTOUT		
SOURCE DIRECTOR	ROM XX VOL. ID XXXXXX MM/DD/YY	
	ADDRESS	
	ST@ LAST@ ATTRI #SECTORS K-XX XXX-XX X XXXX	
Explanation:		
Heading	Meaning	
ТҮРЕ	S = source statements P = procedure	
NAME	Name of library entry (up to six characters)	
ADDRESS	Addresses of first and last sectors that contain the library entry.	
(FIRST and LAST)	Addresses are expressed by track and sector numbers. EXAMPLE: 008-03 means track 8, sector 3.	
ATTRI	T = temporary P = permanent	
#SECTORS	Total number of sectors used for the library entry.	

Figure 49. Source Library Directory Printout

PRINTOUT

OBJECT DIRECTOR	RY FROM XX	X VOL. ID	XXXXX M	 M/DD/ [*]	YY				
TYPE NAME X X XXXXXX		EYL/ TXT EC CAT C/SS XXX	r addr	DISP	ENTRY PNT XXXX	CORE SEC XXX	ATTR XXXX	LEVEL XXX	TOT SEC XXXX
PLANATION:									
Heading	Meaning	ıg							
ТҮРЕ	The fis	st character	printed inc	licates †	the attribu	ites of the	entry as fo	ollows:	
	P =	= permanent	t						
	T =	= temporary							
		econd charac ng is as follo	•	indicat	tes the typ	e of modu	ule the entr	ry is. Its	
		= Object pro = routine	ogram						
NAME	Name c	of library er	ntry (up to	six cha	racters)				
DSK ADD		ss where libr cimal). T = t			in disk. El	XAMPLE:	: 015/10 n	neans track	k 15, sector 10
CYL/SEC	Address	ss where libr	rary entry t	cegins o	on disk (in	hexadecir	mal). C = c	cylinder, S	= sector.
TXT-CAT	the libra		Object prog	grams c	consist of t	two parts:	text and f		ne text portion of kt is the program;
		utines, this i ge Editor for				e routine.	. This num	iber is used	d by the Overlay
						e routine.	This num	ber is used	by the Ov

Figure 50 (Part 1 of 2). Object Library Directory Printout 166

)
PRINTOUT (Continued	I
Heading	Meaning
LINK ADDR	Object programs only. Assigned core hexadecimal address of this library entry.
RLD DISP	Object programs only. It indicates the hexadecimal position in which RLD information begins in the last text sector. If the last text sector contains no RLD information, the RLD displacement is 0, indicating the information starts in the next sector.
ENTRY PNT	Object programs only. Main storage address hexadecimal where program execution begins before relocations.
CORE SEC	Core size, given in sectors, required to run the program.
ATTR	Byte 1:
	Bit 0=1 Permanent Entry
	0 Temporary Entry
	Bit 1=1 Inquiry. This program requires that the Inquiry key be pressed to start processing.
	Bit 2=1 Inquiry Invoking. This program runs in program level 1 and can be rolled out to
	allow an Inquiry program to run.
	Bit 3=1 Dedicated. In a DPF system, this program must run with the other program level inactive.
	Bit 4=1 Source Required. This program requires the allocation of the \$WORK and \$SOURCE files. \$SOURCE must be filled either from the system input device or a source library.
	Bit 5=1 Deferred Mount. This program accepts mounting of packs during its execution.
	Bit 6=1 PTF Applied. A program temporary fix (PTF) has been applied to this program.
	Bit 7=1 Overlay Object Program
	Byte 2:
	Bit 0=1 System Input Dedication. The system input device must be dedicated to this program. The device is released at end of job.
	Bit 1=1 Checkpoint/Restart Program
	Bit 2=1 Direct Source Read. This program can have a // COMPILE statement and a no source
	required attribute (byte 1, bit 4=0). The program will access the source itself.
	Bit 3=1 Macro Processor Allowed. This program can be preceded by the macro processor.
	If the source required attribute is present and a // SWITCH 1XXXXXXX statement was processed, the \$SOURCE file is opened as input instead of output.
	Bit 4 Reserved
	Bit 5=1 Program Common. This program requires that a new load address be calculated at
	load time to place it in main storage beyond its own program common region.
	Bit 6 Reserved
	Bit 7 Reserved
LEVEL	Release level of system programs. For user programs this can be assigned by the Overlay Linkage Editor.
TOT SEC	Total number of disk sectors occupied by the library entry.
L	

Elerine EO	Ohioot	1 ibeau	Directory	Duintaut	(Dant 2 of 2)
Flaure DU.	Object	LIDIARY	Directory	FINIOUL	(Part 2 of 2)

SYSTEM DIRECTORY FROM xx VOL. ID xxxxxx mm/dd/yy	
SOURCE LIBRARY SECTION	1
Source Directory Location	TTT-SS
Next Available Library Sector	TTT-SS
End of Library	TTT-SS
Number of Directory Sectors	XXX
Number of Permanent Library Sectors	XXX
Number of Active Library Sectors	XXX
Number of Available Library Sectors	xxx
Allocated Size of Library	YYY
OBJECT LIBRARY SECTION	
Object Directory Location	TTT-SS
Allocated Size of Directory	YYY
Start of Library	TTT-SS
Allocated End of Library	TTT-SS
Extended End of Library	TTT-SS
Number of Available Permanent Directory Entries	XXX
Number of Available Temporary Directory Entries	XXX
First Temporary Directory Entry	TTT-SS-DDD
Next Available Temporary Directory Entry	TTT-SS-DDD
Next Available Library Sector for Permanents	TTT-SS
Next Available Library Sector for Temporaries	TTT-SS
Number of Available Library Sectors for Permanents (2)	XXX
Number of Available Library Sectors for Temporaries	XXX
Number of Active Library Sectors	XXX
Number of Active Object Permanent Library Sectors	XXX
Number of Active Routine Permanent Library Sectors	XXX
Allocated Size of Library	YYY
Roll-in/Roll-out Location	TTT-SS
Roll-in/Roll-out Size	YYY
Scheduler Work Area Location	TTT-SS
Scheduler Work Area Size	YYY
Start of Libraries	TTT-SS
End of Libraries	TTT-SS
 TTT-SS-DDD means track, sector, and displacement. Displacement is the beginning of the sector. XXX means number of sectors. YYY means Number of Available Library Sectors for Permanents reflects the space 	ans number of tracks.

manent library entry to the allocated end of the library. Gaps and temporary library entries are not reflected in this figure. The actual number of sectors available for permanent entries may be calculated by subtracting Number of Active Object Permanent Library Sectors from the total number of sectors in the library. If the result is much larger than Number of Available Library Sectors for Permanents, the library should be reorganized using the ALLOCATE function to remove gaps and temporary object library entries.

Figure 51. System Directory Printout

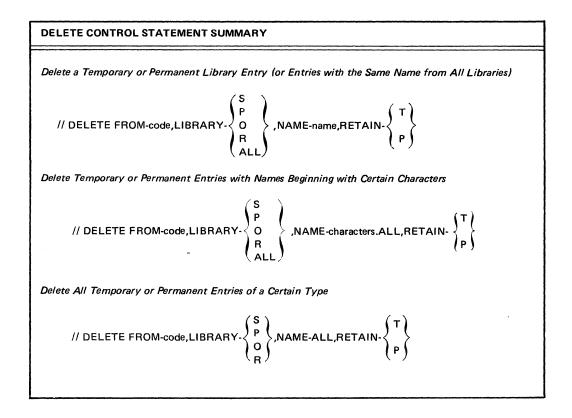
DELETE FUNCTION

DELETE USES

- Delete a temporary or permanent entry from a library (or entries with the same name from all libraries).
- Delete temporary or permanent library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.
- Delete all temporary or permanent library entries of a certain type.

DELETE RESTRICTIONS

- System modules cannot be deleted from the active system pack (the pack the system was loaded from at IPL time).
- Library Maintenance program modules cannot be deleted from the active program pack.
- When all temporary entries are deleted from the object library using LIBRARY-O,NAME-ALL,RETAIN-T, the temporary routines (LIBRARY-R) are also deleted.
- The RETAIN parameter must match the attribute of the entry in the library. Otherwise the entry is considered not found. RETAIN-T is assumed if the RETAIN parameter is omitted.



DELETE PARAMETERS		
	Location of disk that	contains library entries you are deleting. Possible codes are:
$\binom{R2}{F2}$	Code	Meaning
	R1	Removable disk on drive one
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one
·	R2	Removable disk on drive two
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two
(S)	F2	
LIBRARY-	Type of entries being	deleted. Possible codes are:
(ALL)	Code	Meaning
	S	Source statements (source library)
	Р	Procedures (source library)
	0	Object programs (object library)
	R	Routines (object library)
	ALL	All types of entries (S, P, O, and R) are being deleted.
NAME- { name characters.ALL }		type indicated in LIBRARY parameter, being deleted. These entified by the RETAIN parameter. Possible codes are:
	Code	Meaning
	name	Name of the library entry, or entries, being deleted.
	character.ALL	Entries that have names beginning with the indicated characters. You can use up to five characters. EXAMPLE: NAME-INV.ALL refers to the entries having names that begin with INV.
	ALL	All entries (of the type indicated in LIBRARY parameter). NAME-ALL cannot be used with LIBRARY-ALL.
$RETAIN \left\{ \begin{array}{c} T \\ P \end{array} \right\}$	Designation of entrie	s being deleted:
	Code	Meaning
	т	Temporary
	Р	Permanent

MODIFY USES

- The MODIFY function is intended primarily for maintenance of source statements and procedures by using a card reader.
- Reserialize a source library entry.
- List the statements in a source library entry.
- Remove statements from a source library entry.
- Replace source library statements.
- Insert statements into a source library entry.

MODIFY RESTRICTIONS

- Sequence numbers are a physical part of the source record and must be placed where they will not conflict with other data in the record. In a procedure they should be placed near the end of the record beyond the OCL and utility control statements' keywords and parameters. The sequence numbers should be placed in source statements where they will not overlay data. For example, data could be destroyed if sequence numbers were placed in RPGII source statements that contained compile-time tables.
- At least three control statements must be entered to modify the source library. A // MODIFY statement is needed to describe the library entry. A // REMOVE, // REPLACE, or // INSERT statement describes the type of modification. A // CEND statement indicates the end of the control statements.
- The sequence numbers specified by the FROM-seqno, TO-seqno, and AFTER-seqno parameters on the // REMOVE, // REPLACE, and // INSERT statements must be valid numbers and exist in the source library entry. There are no default values for these parameters. The number of digits entered must be the same as the number of positions specified by the SEQFLD parameter.
- All statements in a source library entry must have ascending sequence numbers in the positions specified by the SEQFLD parameter.
- Multiple operations (REMOVE, REPLACE, INSERT) may be performed within the same MOD-IFY run if they are done in an ascending sequential order. That is, the FROM sequence number in a REMOVE or REPLACE statement must be greater than the last sequence number in the preceding statement. The AFTER sequence number of an INSERT statement must be equal to or greater than the last sequence number of the preceding statement. Consecutive INSERT statements must not have the same sequence number.
- When modification is complete, the directory entry is written back with a permanent attribute.
- The control statements following the // MODIFY statement are read from the system input device, which can be the keyboard or a card reader. Since the REMOVE control statement is valid for both the \$DELET utility and \$MAINT utility, care should be used when modifying a \$DELET procedure. The program will attempt to determine if the REMOVE statement is data or a control statement. If a determination cannot be made, the program will halt and wait for further instructions.

MODIFY CONTROL STATEMENT SUMMARY

Initiate Modification

 $// MODIFY NAME-name, FROM-code, LIBRARY- \left\{ \begin{array}{c} S \\ P \end{array} \right\}, WORK-code, RESER- \left\{ \begin{array}{c} YES \\ \underline{NO} \\ ONLY \end{array} \right\}, LIST- \left\{ \begin{array}{c} YES \\ \underline{NO} \\ \underline{NO} \end{array} \right\}, SEQFLD-xxyy, INCR-number$

Control Statements Following // MODIFY

Delete all statements between and including the FROM and TO sequence numbers.

// REMOVE FROM-segno, TO-segno

Replace all statements between and including the FROM and TO sequence numbers with the statements supplied.

// REPLACE FROM-seqno, TO-seqno

1 - n statements to replace those removed

Insert the supplied statements after the statement indicated by the AFTER parameter.

// INSERT AFTER-seqno

1 - n statements to be inserted

MODIFY PARAMETERS					
NAME-name	Current name of th the library director	ne entry you are modifying. This is the name that identifies the entry in Y.			
FROM-code	Location of the dis	k that contains the entry you are modifying. Possible codes are:			
	Code	Meaning			
	R1	Removable disk on drive one			
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one			
	R2	Removable disk on drive two			
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two			
LIBRARY- $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} S \\ P \end{array} \right\}$	Type of library ent	ry you are modifying. Possible codes are:			
	Code	Meaning			
	S	Source statements (source library)			
	Ρ	Procedures (source library)			
WORK-code	Location of the disk containing space the program can use as a work area. Possible codes are:				
	Code	Meaning			
	R1	Removable disk on drive one			
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one			
	R2	Removable disk on drive two			
	F2	Fixed disk on drive two			
RESER-	Specifies whether r library. Possible in	reserialization should be done when the entry is placed back in the source formation is:			
	Information	Meaning			
	YES	Reserialization is done.			
	NO	Reserialization is not done. NO is assumed if the RESER parametiss omitted.			
	ONLY	Reserialize only; no other maintenance is done. When this is code no REMOVE, REPLACE, or INSERT statements can be entered. A // CEND statement is not needed.			
LIST- $\left\{ \frac{\text{YES}}{\text{NO}} \right\}$		the source library entry should be listed when the MODIFY run is complet ne LIST parameter is omitted.			
SEQFLD-xxyy	number can be up	nding positions of the field that contains the sequence number. The sequence to eight digits long. The starting position is entered first (xx) and then the y). If this parameter is not entered, 9296 is assumed.			
INCR-number	Increment value for sequence field if reserialization (RESER-YES or RESER-ONLY) is specified. The value can be up to five digits. If this parameter is not entered, a value of 10 is assumed.				

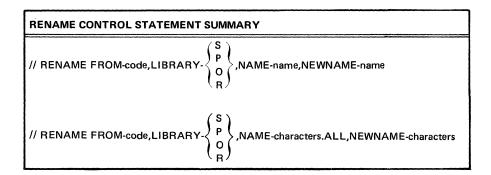
REMOVE, REPLACE, INSERT PARAMETERS

FROM-seqno	The sequence number of the first statement to be used in the operation.
TO-seqno	The sequence number of the last statement to be used in the operation.
AFTER-seqno	The sequence number of the state- ment after which the new statements are to be added.

RENAME FUNCTION

RENAME USE

- Change the name of a library entry.
- Change the name of library entries that have names beginning with certain characters.



RENAME RESTRICTIONS

- System modules should not be renamed on the active system pack (the pack the system was loaded from during IPL).
- Library Maintenance modules should not be renamed on the active program pack.

RENAME PARAMET	ERS	
FROM-code		on of disk that contains the entry e renaming. Possible codes are:
	Code	Meaning
	R1	Removable disk on drive one
	F1	Fixed disk on drive one
	R2	Removable disk on drive two
(S)	F2	Fixed disk on drive two
		of library entry you are renaming. le codes are:
	Code	Meaning
	S	Source statements (source library)
	Ρ	Procedures (source library)
	0	Object programs (object library)
	R	Routines (object library)
NAME-name	namin	nt name of the entry you are re- g. This is the name that identifies try in the library directory.
NAME-characters.ALL	the inc	hose entries beginning with dicated characters.(You can to five characters.)
NEWNAME-name		ame you want to give the entry. w these rules to construct the name:
	1.	You can use any System/3 charac- ters except blanks, commas, quotes, and periods. (Appendix A lists the characters.) However, the names of all IBM programs begin with a dollar sign (\$). Therefore, to avoid possible duplication, do not use a dollar sign as the first character in the names you use for your entries. The first character must be alpha- betic.
	2.	You can use up to six characters, but you cannot use the names ALL, DIR and SYSTEM. They have special meanings in the NAME parameter.
NEWNAME-characters	names	ing characters you want to use in identifying the copies. (You can to five characters.

OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the Library Maintenance utility program.

// LOAD \$MAINT,code

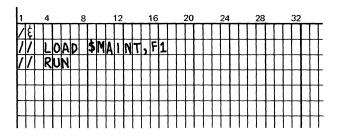
// RUN

The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the Library Maintenance program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two

EXAMPLES

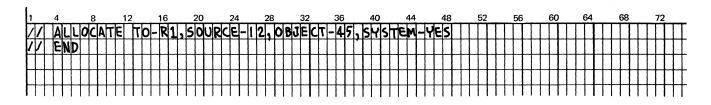
Figures 52-67 illustrate the functions of the Library Maintenance utility program. Figure 52 is an example of the OCL needed to load the utility program. The other figures are examples of the control statement necessary to carry out the specified function.



Explanation:

 Library Maintenance program is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one

Figure 52. OCL Load Sequence for Library Maintenance



- Libraries are being created on the removable disk on drive one (TO-R1 in ALLOCATE statement).
- Source library space is 12 tracks (SOURCE-12).
- Object library space is 45 tracks (OBJECT-45). The object library will contain system programs (SYSTEM-YES). Thus, the disk area will also include space for the Scheduler work area.
- Directory will be three tracks.

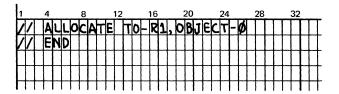
Figure 53. Allocate Example. Creating Both Source and Object Libraries on a Disk

1			4				8				12				16			:	20			24				28				32				36
1	1		A	L	L	0	c	A	Т	E		Π	0	-	R	1	,	S	0	υ	R	E	1	1	5	,	W	0	R	K	-	F	1	[
1	1		E	N	D				Γ						Γ		Γ																	
Γ	Γ						T										Γ										Γ							Γ
Γ	T		-	-			T		Γ				Γ				T	T									Γ							Γ
F	$t \rightarrow t$	t				\vdash	t	F	\vdash			F	F				t	F			t		F		-	\vdash	F		1		F		Η	F

Explanation:

.

- Source library is located on the removable disk on drive one (TO-R1 in ALLOCATE statement).
- Size of the source library is being changed to 15 tracks (SOURCE-15).
- Any time the program changes the size of a library, it reorganizes the library. To do this, it needs a work area. This area is on the fixed disk on drive one (WORK-F1).
- Figure 54. Allocate Example: Changing the Size of a Source Library



Explanation:

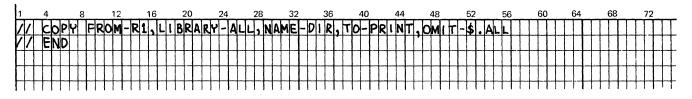
- Object library is located on the removable disk on drive one (TO-R1 in ALLOCATE statement).
- OBJECT-0 parameter tells the program to delete the object library. If a Scheduler work area precedes the object library, it is also deleted.
- Figure 55. Allocate Example: Deleting the Object Library from a Disk

1		4				8				12	2			16	5			20)		_	24				28			;	32			3	6			40)			44		4	8			5	2			56	i		e	50			64	4			6	8			7	2			_
$\overline{\Lambda}$	1	k	k	P	Y		F	R	0	M	1-	F	1	1	L	1	B	R	A	R	4	-	0	,	N	A	M	E	-	S	Y	5	TI	EN	4,	h	0	-	R	1			Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Γ		Π	Τ		Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ		Τ	T	T	Т	Τ	Т	Τ	T	•
1	1		N		Γ		Γ	Γ			Γ	T	T	Т	Γ	Τ	Γ	Γ	T	T	Γ		Γ									1	T	T	Τ	T	T	T	Γ				T	T	1	T	T	T	T	Τ					T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	Т	T	T	T	T	•
Π	T	T	Τ	Т	Γ	Γ	Γ		Γ	Γ	Г	T	T	T	Γ	Τ	T	T	T	Τ			Γ	Γ									T	T	T	T	T	T	Γ			1	T	T	T	T	Τ	T	T	Γ		Π			T	Τ	Т	Τ	T	Τ	Т	T	T	Т	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	•
Π	T	T	T	T	T	Γ		Γ		I		Т	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T		Γ									1	T	T	T	T	T	T	T			1	T	1			T	T	T	T	Π	Π			T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	Τ	T	T	T	T	•
П	T	T	T	T	Γ	T	Γ	Γ	Γ	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	1	T	Γ	Γ	Γ								1	1	T	T	T	T	T	Γ	T		1	1	1	1	T	T	T	T	T	Π	П			1	T	T	T	T	1	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	-

Explanation:

- System programs are in the object library on the fixed disk on drive one (LIBRARY-O and FROM-F1 in COPY statement).
- The NAME parameter (NAME-SYSTEM) tells the program to copy the system programs.
- The disk that is to contain the copy is the removable disk on drive one (TO-R1).

Figure 56. Copy Example: Copying Minimum System from One Disk to Another



- All library directories and the system directory on the removable disk on drive one are printed (COPY statement):
 - 1. FROM identifies the disk containing the directories.
 - 2. LIBRARY indicates which directories are to be printed.
 - 3. NAME and TO indicate that the program is to be printing directories.
 - 4. All entries beginning with a \$ are not printed.

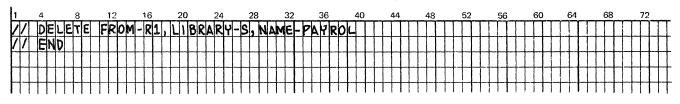
Figure 57. Copy Example: Printing Library Directories

1			4				8				12	2				16	;			2	0			2	24			:	28				32	2			36	;		4	40			4	44			2	18			E	52			5	6			60)	 6	64			6	8			7	12		
\overline{V}	/		c	0	P	Y		F	R	0	M	1	-1	R	1	,	l			3	R	4	R	7	-1	0	,	N	A	M	E	_	A	k	c	T	,	T	0	-	F	1	,	R	E	Т	A	1	N	-	R	Τ	Τ		Τ	Τ	Γ	Γ	Γ	Π			Τ	Τ	Т	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Ţ		
1	1		E	N	D						Γ	Τ	T				Γ	T	T	T	Ι	T	T		Τ							Γ		Γ	Γ	Γ		Γ					1						Τ				Τ	T	T	Τ	Τ	1	Γ				Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	T	Τ	T	Ι		
Γ		Τ	Τ	Τ								T	T			Γ	Γ	T	T	T			T	T	T																											T	T	T	T	T		T	Г					1	Τ	T	T	1	T	T	1	Π	
Γ			Τ								Γ	T	Ţ			Γ	T	T	Τ		1				Τ										Γ		Γ						1						1			T	Ţ	T	T	T	Т	Γ	Γ						T	Τ	T	T	Τ	T	٦		
Γ		1	Τ								Ι	T	1			Γ	T	T	T	1	1	T	1	T	1							Γ		Γ	T			Γ	T										1			1	T	T	T	T	T	T	Γ			1		1	T	T	T	1	T	T	1		

Explanation:

- LIBRARY-0, NAME-ACCT, and FROM-R1 in the COPY statement tell the program to read the object program named ACCT from the removable disk on drive one.
- TO-F1 tells the program to copy the object program to the fixed disk on drive one. There is no NEWNAME parameter in the COPY statement. Therefore, the name the program will have on the fixed disk is ACCT (NAME-ACCT). Since the old version of the program already exists on the fixed disk under that name, the old version is replaced.
- The Library Maintenance program normally halts before replacing a library entry. The RETAIN-R parameter, however, tells the program to omit that halt.

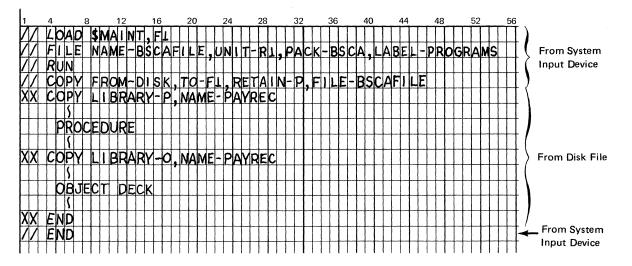
Figure 58. Copy Example: Copying Object Program to F1



Explanation:

 The program deletes a set of source statements (LIBRARY-S in DELETE statement) named PAYROL (NAME-PAYROL) from the removable disk on drive one (FROM-R1) that has a temporary attribute.

Figure 59. Delete Example: Deleting an Entry from a Library



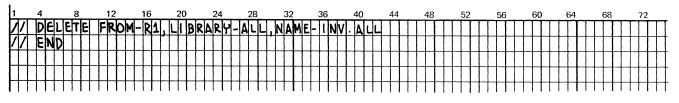
- The OCL for a File-to-Library copy must contain a FILE statement for the disk file.
- The filename on the // COPY statement (FILE-BSCAFILE) matches the filename on the OCL FILE statement (NAME-BSCAFILE).
- The // COP'Y statement does not contain an RECL parameter, so a record length of 96 is assumed.
- All source and object decks in the disk file must have a
 // COPY statement as the first card image. These // statements
 (including the // END statement) are printed with XX replacing
 the // to indicate they were read from disk rather than from
 the system input device.
- All source and object decks in the disk file must have a
 // COPY statement as the first card image and a // CEND
 statement as the last card to indicate the end of the copy
 for each deck. These // statements (including the // END
 statement) are printed with XX replacing the // to indicate
 they were read from disk rather than from the system input
 device.

Note: The // CEND statement is not printed.

 The // END statement read from the file (printed XX END), causes the next statement to be read from the system input device. A // END statement must still be read from the system input device to indicate the end of the Library Maintenance control statements.

Note: The // END statement in the file is optional as the system will recognize the physical end of the data file and terminate the copy.

Figure 60. Copy Example: Disk File to Library



- The entries being deleted are on the removable disk on drive one (FROM-R1 in DELETE statement).
- The program deletes all entries from both source and object libraries (LIBRARY-ALL) that have names beginning with the characters INV (NAME-INV.ALL), with temporary attributes.

Figure 61. Delete Example: Deleting All Entries with Names that Begin with Certain Characters

Ŀ			4			8	3			12	2			16	3			20)			24			2	28			3	2			36	5		2	10			4	4		48		5	2			56			60)	6	4			68	1	7	2		
	1/		2	Ell	- 18	21	E		F	R	2)h	1.	R	1	.,	۱	1	B	R	Δ	R	Y	-	P	, 1	V		1E	-	1		L	5	R	E	Т			1-	η	•										Γ	Π		Т	Τ		Π		T	T	T	Τ
	1	1	EI	NC	>	Τ	Т	Τ	Т	T	Τ	Τ	Т	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	Τ					Τ	Τ	Т	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	Τ	Γ	Γ				Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ			Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ			Τ	T		Π		T	Τ	Τ	Γ	Π	Τ	Τ	T	T
ſ	Π		Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	T	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	Ι	T	Τ	Τ	Τ				Τ	T	T	T	T		T	T	Τ	Γ	Γ	Π			T	T	T	T					Τ	Τ			Τ	Τ	Τ	Π		T	T		Γ		T	Τ	T	Т
ſ	Π		Τ	T	T	T	Т	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	Γ					T		T	T	T	T	T	Τ	Γ	Γ	Π			Τ	T	T	T	Γ	Π	T	T	Τ	Τ	Π	1	T	Τ	T	П	1	T	T	Τ	Γ		T	T	T	T
T	TT		T	1	T	T	Т	T	ľ	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T				1	T	1	T	T	T	T	T	T	Γ	Γ	Π		1	T	T	T	T	T			T	T	T	Π	1	1	T	T	П	1	T	T					T	T	Т

Explanation:

- The entries being deleted are on the removable disk on drive one (FROM-R1 in DELETE statement).
- All temporary procedures are being deleted from the source library (LIBRARY-P,NAME-ALL).

Figure 62. Delete Example: Deleting All Library Entries of One Type



Explanation:

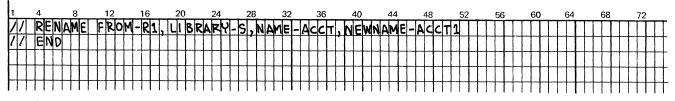
- The source module named INPUT1 on disk drive R1 is being modified.
- The work space will be on R1.
- The sequence numbers are in positions 1-5 of the statements.
- Sequence numbers 00124 00156 are being deleted from the module.
- The module is reserialized with increments of one.
- The module is not listed.

Figure 63. Modify Example: Removing Source Statements from a Module

1/ MODIFY NAME-	POCOL FROM-RZ	LIBRARY-P. WORK-RI.	RESER-WO, LIST-YES
1/ REPLACE FROM	N-00101. TO-001	02	
1/ FILE WARE-IN		NIT OF OCCORS ON	RETAIN-P OG/01
1/ FILE NAME-WO	RK. PACK-VOLA.	UNIT-RÍ	00/02
1/ CEND			

- The procedure named POC01 on disk drive R2 is being modified.
- The work space will be on R1.
- The sequence numbers are in default positons 92-96.
- Statements with sequence numbers 00101-00102 are being replaced.
- The module is not reserialized.
- The module is listed.

Figure 64. Modify Example: Replacing Statements in a Procedure



Explanation:

- The removable disk on drive one contains the entry being renamed (FROM-R1 in RENAME statement).
- The entry is a set of source statements in the source library (LIBRARY-S). Its name is ACCT (NAME-ACCT).
- The entry name is being changed to ACCT1 (NEWNAME-ACCT1).

Figure 65. Rename Example: Renaming a Set of Source Statements in a Source Library

1	4		8		1	2			16			2	0			24	1			28			3	2			36	;		4	10			44	ŀ		4	48			52	2			56		
	M	DI	F	1	F	RC		-	F	1		W	3	R K	(]-	Ŧ	1		N	A	M	E	- 0	ck	25	sπ	-	L	1	в	R	A	Ry	-	S						Τ	Τ	Τ	Π	Π	Π	Т
1/1	1			R	Pr	51	ER	-	Y	E	Ś		sk	56	₹¥	L	0	-	1		8			L	15	sΠ		X					ľ	Τ		ľ				Τ	Τ	Т	Τ	Π			T
V	111	ISE	R	7	A	Fh	TE	R	-	ø	1	A	-1/	1	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ				T	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Т	Γ		Π		Τ	Τ	Τ	Γ				T		T	Τ	T	Π	Π		T
ØR	Ø86	8I	Π	Τ		Τ	Τ	Γ					Τ		Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ				Τ	Τ	Τ									T		Γ		3			8	3	C	A	H	E		T
V	CL	ENC)T	T	Π	T		Ι					T	T	T		Γ										T				T	T								T	T	Τ	Τ	Π	Π		Τ
111	TTT	TT	П	1.	П	Т	1	T			T		Τ	T	Т	T	T	T	T				T	T	T	T	Т	T	T	Π		T	T	T	T					T	T	T	T	Π	П		-

Explanation:

- The source module COST on disk drive F1 is being modified.
- The work space is on F1.
- The sequence numbers are in positions 80-84 of the statements.
- A statement is being inserted after statement number 00070.
- The module is reserialized with the default increment value of 10.
- The module is listed.

Figure 66. Modify Example: Inserting a Statement in a Source Module

	11		4				8	;			1	2				16	;			20	C			2	4			2	8			:	32			;	36				40				44	4			4	8			5:	2			5	6			4	60)			64	4			6	8			
1.	11	1	L	0	A	D	Γ	\$	M	1	4	τ	N	T	,	F	1	Ι	Γ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	T	Τ	T	T	Τ	Τ		٦										Γ	Γ	Γ	Γ	Τ	T	T	Τ	T	Τ	Τ	Т	Γ	Γ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	Τ			Γ	Γ	Γ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ	T	Γ	-
	11	1	R	u	N		Γ	Γ	Γ	T	Τ					Γ	Γ	T	Γ	Τ	T	T	Τ	T	T	T	T	T	T	1															Γ	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T						T	T	T		T	T	T	T		-
2.	1/	1	A	L	L	0	С	A	7		E		Т	0	-	R	1	,	0	E	3)	E	C		7	- (ø	2	s	0	u	R	С	ε	-	ø										Ι																												
3.	1/1	1	A	L	L	0	c	A	7	-10	5		Т	0	-	R	1	,	0	e	3]]	E	c		r.	-	4	0	,	s	o	u	R	с	ε	_	1	2	,	s	Y	5	T	E	M	1-	- }	1	E	s	, li	01	R	s	jz	7	e	Ξŀ	-	7														L
4.	11	1	c	0	P	Y		F	F	2	2	M	-	F	1	,	7	0	-	F	1		2	-		3	z/	+	R	Y	-	A	L	L	,	N	A	м	E	-	A	L	L																															
	11	'L	E	N	D																Ι																								Ι	Ι																												L
																						T	T				T	T																	I			T					Τ	ł		I																		-
		1																		Ι	Τ		Ι	T		T			Τ																	Ι					Τ		Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Ι	Τ	Ι							Τ	Τ		Τ	Τ				
							Γ	Γ	Γ	Τ	T					Γ	Γ	Τ	Τ	T	ł	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	Ι															Ι	Τ	T	Τ	Τ		Τ	Τ	Τ			T	T								Γ	Τ	Τ	Ι	T	Τ	T	Τ	Π	-
			Γ				Γ	Γ	Τ	T		F	łe	10	a	d	Sy	/s1	e	m	(1	P	L)	f	rc	m	I F	R 1		T													Γ	Γ	Γ	Τ	T	T	T	Τ	T	T	T	Γ	Τ	Τ	T	T	T				Γ	Γ	Γ	T	Τ	T	Τ	T	Τ	T	Π	
		Τ	Γ					T		T								Τ	Τ		T		T		T		T	T															Γ	T	T	T	T	T		T	T	T	T		T	T	T	T	T							T			T	T	T			_
								Γ									E			Τ			Τ	T	Ι	T	Τ	T	Ι													Γ	Γ	Ι	Τ	Τ	T	T	T			T	Τ	T	T		Τ	Τ																_
5	11	1	L	٥	A	D		¢	-	1	4	I	N	Т	,	R	1		Τ	Τ	T	T	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	T	Τ													Γ	Γ	Γ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ	Τ			T	Τ													T	Τ	T	Τ	T			-
	11	1	R	u	N			Γ	T	T	T						Γ	T	T	T	T	T	Τ	T	T	T	T	T															Γ		T	T	T	T		1	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T		Τ			Γ	Γ	Γ	T	T		T	T	T	T		-
6.	11	1	A	L	L	0	C	A	7		E		Т	0	-	F	1	Ι,	0	B	J	FE	c		r	- (ø	,	5	0	u	R	c	E	-	ø										Ι							Τ	T	T	Τ	T		T					Γ		Ι			Τ	Τ	Τ			Ē
7.	11	1	A	L	L	0	c	A	7		E																											2	,	s	Y	S	T	E	M	1-	-)	Y	E	s	, 2	0 ji	T A	25	Z	Z	2	εŀ	-	7														
8.	11	1	C	0	P	Y		ļ	F	zk	2	M	_	R	1	Ι,	7	C) -	F	1		4	1		BI	R	9	R	Y	-	A	L	L	,	N	A	Μ	E	-	A	L	L					T		Τ	Ι		Τ	Ι	Ι			T																
	11	'	E	N	D						T															T	T																						I				T	Γ						T														
	I T	T	1	1	1		1	1	1	Г	Т	F	₹e	lo	a	d S	sv	/s1	e	m	()	PI	_)	f	г rc	n n	T F	= 1	Т	Т	Т	1	7		- 1							I T	1	1	1	ſ		T	T	T	T	r	T	1	1	1	r	Г	Т	Т	1	1	1	1	1	Г	T	Т	Т	T	Т	Т	٦	

- 1. The system and \$MAINT are both loaded from F1.
- 2. The libraries on R1 are deallocated (if present).
- 3. New library space is allocated on R1.
- 4. The libraries are copied from F1 to R1. The object library is reorganized as it is copied. Temporary entries become permanent when copied (see Disk-to-Disk Considerations, Output).
- 5. The system and \$MAINT are now loaded from R1.
- 6. The libraries on F1 are deallocated.
- 7. New library space is allocated on F1.
- 8. The libraries are copied back to F1. The pack on R1 could be used as a back-up pack. It contains the same libraries as F1.

Figure 67. Reorganizing the System Pack

IBM SYSTEM/3 5445 DATA INTERCHANGE UTILITY PROGRAM-\$VTOC

All IBM 2316 disk packs initialized on System/3 5445 Disk Drive by \$INIT have a System/360-System/370 formatted volume table of contents (VTOC). The System/360-System/370 VTOC is not used by System/3. When it is necessary to exchange data between System/3 and System/360-System/370 on a 2316 disk pack, the IBM System/3 5445 Data Interchange Utility can be used (see Appendix C for an alternate method). The utility must be run going to and returning from System/360-System/370.

When the utility program is run against a 2316 disk pack, the contents of the System/3 VTOC are mapped to the System/360-System/370 VTOC. If data is to be returned to the System/3 via the utility without reinitialization, then restrictions on the use of the pack on System/360-System/370 must be observed. Any deviations from these restrictions can result in the format of the pack being altered beyond the capacity of the utility run returning the pack or unrecoverable errors on the pack while processing it on System/3.

Following is a list of the methods of processing data files on the interchange pack by OS or DOS:

Functions (sequential processing only)	Disposition	Туре	Open
Reading with OS using BSAM or QSAM	OLD	FBS	INPUT
Output with OS using BSAM or QSAM	OLD FB	or FBS	OUTPUT
Reading with DOS using SAM-GET			INPUT
Update in place with OS using BSAM or QSAM	OLD	FBS	UPDATE
Update in place with DOS using SAM- GET/PUT		UPDATE	INPUT

CAUTION:

Only the above disposition and open types may be used.

The update-in-place function can be used on a data set written on System/3 filled with dummy records. Since duplicate file names are not allowed on System/360-System/370, the System/3 file names will be qualified with the file date. An example would be PAYROLL. D711026. PAYROLL would be the file name on System/3 and the file was created on October 26, 1971.

Files to be processed by QSAM must have a logical record length that is an even submultiple of **256.**

No files may be allocated or deleted on System/360 or System/370 if the pack is to be read on System/3 without reinitializing.

Any System/3 P or T file on the pack is mapped into the System/360-System/370 VTOC. Multivolume files are not supported and their interchange results in a System/360-System/370 entry that appears like a single volume file. Split cylinder files will have a System/360-System/370 format one but it is not usable due to basic differences in split file philosophy between the systems. If the System/3 file type is either sequential or indexed but not split, then a System/360-System/370 end-of-file mark is written in the file area at the end of data (256 bytes must be available). When the utility is run to return the pack to System/3, the end of file marks are removed and the System/360-System/370 VTOC entries are deleted.

The utility must always be run just before going to System/360-System/370 and just after returning to System/3. Any deviation from this procedure can result in loss of data on the pack.

The attributes of all System/360-System/370 VTOC entries assigned by the utility are as follows:

Name of file	-	name, DYYMMDD
Creation date	-	00000
Expiration date	_	99365 (date protected)
Volume sequence number	-	0001
Record/block format	-	FIXED BLOCK STANDARD (FBS)
Organization		sequential (regardless of S/3 type)
System Code		"IBM DSM/3"
Block length		256 bytes
Logical record length	-	same as S/3 length
Extent type	_	single

CONTROL STATEMENT SUMMARY

System/3 to System/360-System/370 Conversion

// NEWVTOC UNIT-
$$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} D1 \\ D2 \end{array} \right\}$$
,PACK-name
// END

System/360-System/370 to System/3 Conversion

// UPDATE UNIT-
$${D1 \\ D2}$$
 ,PACK-name // END

PARAMETER S	UMMARY
PACK-name	Name of the disk.
UNIT-code	Location of the disk. Possible codes are D1 and D2.

PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

PACK Parameter

The PACK parameter (PACK-name) tells the program the name of the pack being transferred. The name you supply in this parameter is the one written on the disk by the Disk Initialization program.

The 5445 Data Interchange program compares the name in the PACK parameter with the name on the disk to ensure they match. In this way, the program ensures that it is using the right disk.

UNIT Parameter

The UNIT parameter (UNIT-code) tells the program the location of the pack being transferred. Codes for the possible locations are as follows:

Code	Meaning
D1	Removable disk on 5445 drive one
D2	Removable disk on 5445 drive two

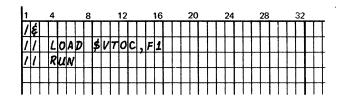
OCL CONSIDERATIONS

The following OCL statements are needed to load the 5445 Data Interchange Utility program:

// LOAD \$VTOC, code // RUN

The code you supply depends on the location of the disk containing the utility program. The codes are as follows:

Code	Meaning
R1	Removable disk on drive one
F1	Fixed disk on drive one
R2	Removable disk on drive two
F2	Fixed disk on drive two



Explanation:

 5445 Data Interchange Utility is loaded from the fixed disk on drive one.

186

,

APPENDIX A. IBM SYSTEM/3 STANDARD CHARACTER SET

Character	Hexadecimal Equivalent	Character	Hexadecimal Equivalent	Character	Hexadecimal Equivalent
Blank	40	#	7B	٥	D8
¢	4A	@	7C	R	D9
•	4B	' (apostrophe)	7D	S	E2
<	4C	=	7E	т	E3
(4D	"	7F	U	E4
+	4E	А	C1	V	E5
1	4F	В	C2	W	E6
&	50	с	C3	x	E7
!	5A	D	C4	Y	E8
\$	5B	E	C5	Z	E9
*	5C	F	C6	0	F0
)	5D	G	C7	1	F1
;	5E	н	C8	2	F2
٦	5F	1	C9	3	F3
- (minus)	60	}	D0	4	F4
1	61	J	D1	5	F5
,	6B	к	D2	6	F6
%	6C	L	D3	7	F7
- (underscore)	6D	М	D4	8	F8
>	6E	N	D5	9	F9
?	6F	0	D6		
:	7A	Р	D7		

188

.

RECORDS TO TRACKS CONVERSION

Determining the Number of Sequential or Direct File Tracks

The following two steps should be followed to determine the number of tracks in a sequential or direct file. (Round results to the next higher whole number.)

- 1. number of records x record length = number of characters
- 2. number of characters (from step 1) number of characters per track \bigcirc = number of tracks

Determining the Number of Indexed File Tracks

The following two steps should be used to determine the number of data tracks in an indexed file:

- 1. number of records x record length = number of characters
- 2. number of characters (from step 1) number of characters per track ① = number of data tracks (round to the next higher whole number)

The following four steps should then be followed to determine the number of index tracks in an indexed file:

- 1. key field length + (3 for 5444 or 4 for 5445) = index entry length
- 2. number of characters in a sector (2) = number of entries per sector
- 3. number of records number of entries per sector (from step 2) = number of sectors
- 4. number of sectors (from step 3) number of sectors per track (3) = number of index tracks (round to the next higher whole number)

(1) 6144 for the 5444 5120 for the 5445

256 (For the 5445, a sector is referred to as a fixed record.)

³24 for the 5444 20 for the 5445 If an indexed 5445 file has more than 15 index tracks (from step 4 above), the file will have a disk master index in addition to the regular index. The following two steps should be followed to determine the number of tracks needed for the master index:

- 1. <u>number of index tracks (greater than 15)</u> number of entries per sector (from step 2) = number of fixed records
- 2. <u>number of fixed records (from step 1)</u> 20

number of disk master index tracks (round results to the next higher whole number)

The total number of tracks in a 5445 indexed file can be determined by adding the number of data tracks, the number of regular index tracks, and the number of disk master index tracks.

CYLINDER/TRACK TO TRACK NUMBER CONVERSION

To convert cylinder/track to track number, multiply cylinder number by the number of tracks on each cylinder and add track.

EXAMPLE: 5/3 = cylinder/track $5 \times 20^* + 3 = 103$ 103 = track number

TRACK NUMBER TO CYLINDER/TRACK CONVERSION

To convert track number to cylinder/track, divide track number by the number of tracks on a cylinder. The quotient is the cylinder and the remainder is track.

EXAMPLE:	103 = track number	
	103 ÷ 20* = 5 (remainder 3)	
	5/3 is the cylinder/track	

* 20 = number of tracks on a cylinder

APPENDIX C. SYSTEM/360-SYSTEM/370 DISK FILE COMPATIBILITY

This appendix is intended for the user who intends to exchange data between System/3 and System/360-System/370 without using the IBM System/3 5445 Data Interchange Utility Program. The access method limitations listed in the utility program section of this manual should be followed.

Disk files created on the 5445 can be read and updated using System/360-System/370. Disk files can also be created using System/360-System/370 and subsequently read or updated with a System/3 Model 10 Disk System.

The volume label and volume table of contents (VTOC) identify the information contained on the disk pack. The volume label identifies the volume and points to the System/360-System/370 VTOC. The System/360-System/370 VTOC contains one label record which describes the complete pack as one System/360-System/370 file. The System/3 VTOC resides in a fixed location within this System/360-System/370 file and can be examined by the System/360-System/370 program.

See *IBM System/3 Disk Systems System Control Program Logic Manual*, SY21-0502, for a description of the System/3 VTOC and volume label.

System/3 to System/360-System/370

The System/3 Disk Initialization Program writes a volume label in the System/360-System/370 format on every disk pack. The System/3 disk format consists of 256-byte physical records. This record length may be altered for System/360-System/370 VTOC records.

Any of the access methods previously listed may be used by System/3 when creating a file to be used by System/360-System/370. The logical records in a particular System/3 file can be accessed by System/360-System/370 by means of a user program using the Sequential Access Method if the user program:

- Locates the file label in the System/3 VTOC for the desired file.
- Uses the start of data information and record length information from the System/3 VTOC to perform the accessing and logical deblocking.
- Uses the end-of-file information from the System/3 VTOC.

System/360-System/370 to System/3

Volumes created on System/360-System/370 can be processed on System/3 if System/360-System/370 provides a System/3 VTOC entry and writes 256-byte physical records. A System/3 user program or utility can then read and unblock the file according to the information in the System/3 VTOC.

CAUTION

If the System/3 VTOC provided by System/360-System/370 is not exactly the same as the System/3 format, unexpected results (destroyed data files or unrelated halts) may occur.

192

.

* (comment) statement (OCL) 31
* parameter for the LOAD statement (OCL) 17
\$ALT (see Alternate Track Assignment program)
\$BUILD (see Alternate Track Rebuild program)
\$COPY (see Disk Copy/Dump program)
\$DCOPY (see Dump/Restore program)
\$DELET (see File Delete program)
\$LABEL (see File and Volume Label Display program)
\$LABEL (see File and Volume Label Display program)
\$MAINT (see Library Maintenance program)
\$TINIT (see Tape Initializations program)
\$TVES (see Tape Error Summary program)
\$VTOC (see 5445 Date Interchange Utility program)
& statement (OCL) 32
/* statement (OCL) 32

accessing existing split cylinder files 72 adding a missing parameter to a procedure 54 adding a statement to a procedure 54 adding source library entries 171, 180 additional disk identification 102 advantages of nested procedures 55 AFTER parameter 171, 174 allocate restrictions 151 ALLOCATE statement (\$MAINT) Allocation of Disk Work Space 151 control statement summary 150 DIRSIZE parameter 152 function 151 **OBJECT** parameter 152 parameter summary 151 restrictions 151 SOURCE parameter 152 SYSTEM parameter 152 TO parameter 152 WORK parameter 153 allocation limit 151 Alternate Track Assignment program 105 ALT statement (see ALT statement) cancel prior assignment 108 conditional assignment 107 examples 109 messages 110 OCL considerations 109 unconditional assignment 108 Alternate Track Rebuild program 111 examples 113 OCL considerations 113 **REBUILD statement (see REBUILD statement)** substitute data 112 ALT statement (\$ALT) ASSIGN parameter 108 control statement summary 106 PACK parameter 107 parameter summary 106 UNASSIGN parameter 108 UNIT parameter 107 VERIFY parameter 107

ASCII parameter FILE statement 48 VOL statement 90 ASSIGN parameter for the ALT statement 108 assignment of alternate tracks Alternate Track Assignment program 107 Disk Initialization program 101 automatic file allocation 73

BLKL parameter, FILE statement 46

CALL statement (OCL) 51 cancel prior alternate track assignment 108 CAP parameter for the UIN statement 101 chain-image area 24 changing 24 changing a permanent file to a scratch file 38 changing a scratch file to a temporary file 38 changing a temporary file to a scratch file 38 changing procedure parameters 53 changing punch device (see PUNCH statement) changing the contents of the chain-image area 24 changing the logging device 28 changing the name of a library entry 174 changing the number of lines the printer will print per page 27 changing the size of the object library 153 changing the size of the source library 154 changing the system input device 29 characters from the source library on disk 26 characters from the system input device 24 example 26 characters to use when naming library entries 163 CHAR, format parameter for the IMAGE statement 24 Checkpoint/Restart OCL consideration 79 programming consideration 79 choosing the designation of a library entry permanent 163 temporary 163 clear initialization 100 coding rules for OCL 6 comments 8 continuation 7 statements beginning with // 6 statement beginning with other than // 7 coding rules for utility control statements 86 comments 8 compatibility of disk files 191 COMPILE statement (OCL) 22 compiling source programs and storing them in the object library 73 sample statements 74 compiling an RPG II program 60

compress in place 156 conditional assignment of alternate tracks 105, 107 example 109 incorrect data 108 surface analysis 101, 107 CONSOLE parameter LOG statement 28 READER statement 29 continuation (OCL) 7 control statement summary (utility programs) ALLOCATE statement (\$MAINT) 150 ALT statement (\$ALT) 106 COPY statement (\$MAINT) 157-168 COPYFILE statement (\$COPY) 128 COPYPACK statement (\$COPY) 128 COPYPACK statement (\$DCOPY) 139 DELETE statement (\$MAINT) 169 DISPLAY statement (\$LABEL) 115 INSERT statement (\$MAINT) 172 MODIFY statement (\$MAINT) 172 NEWVTOC statement (\$VTOC) 184 REBUILD statement (\$BUILD) 111 REMOVE statement (\$MAINT) 172 REMOVE statement (\$DELET) 122 RENAME statement (\$MAINT) 174 REPLACE statement (\$MAINT) 172 SCRATCH statement (\$DELET) 122 SELECT statement (\$COPY) 128 UIN statement (\$INIT) 98 UPDATE statement (\$VTOC) 184 VOL statement (\$INIT) 98 VOL statement (\$TINIT) 90 conversion cylinder - tracks 190 records - tracks 189 track number - cylinder number 190 convert seven track tape 48 COPY statement (\$MAINT) control statement summary 158-160 File-to-library 164 FROM parameter 161 function 157 LIBRARY parameter 161 library-to-card 165 library to library 164 library-to-printer/card considerations 165 NAME parameter 161 NEWNAME parameter 162 parameters 161-162 reader-to-library 164 **RETAIN** parameter 163 TO parameter 162 uses 157 COPYFILE statement (\$COPY) control statement summary 128 DELETE parameter 133 OMIT parameter 133 OUTPTX parameter 130 OUTPUT parameter 130 parameter summary 129 REORG parameter 133 WORK parameter 133 copying an entire disk 130, 139 example 137

copying files 132 example 137 copying minimum system from one disk to another 159 example 176 copying multivolume files 135 copying multivolume indexed files 135 direct file attributes 135 maintaining correct relative record numbers 135 maintaining proper volume sequence numbers 135 copying multivolume indexed files 135 copying object program to F1 177 example 177 COPYPACK statement (\$COPY) control statement summary 128 FROM parameter 131 parameter summary 129 TO parameter 131 COPYPACK statement (\$COPY) control statement summary 139 FROM parameter 140 parameter summary 139 TO parameter 140 correcting characters on an alternate track 111 example 113 creating a source library 154 creating an object library 152 creating disk files 60 creating split cylinder files 71-72

Data Interchange Utility 183 DATA parameter for the REMOVE statement (\$DELET) 124 **DATE** parameter FILE statement (OCL) 39 disk 39 tape 46 REMOVE statement (\$DELET) 122 SCRATCH statement (\$DELET) 122 date parameter for the DATA statement (OCL) 16 DATE statement (OCL) 16 DEFER parameter, FILE statement 48 DELETE parameter for the COPYFILE statement (\$COPY) 133 **DELETE** statement (\$MAINT) control statement summary 169 FROM parameter 170 function 169 LIBRARY parameter 170 NAME parameter 170 parameters 170 restrictions 169 **RETAIN** parameter 170 summary 169 uses 169 deleting an object library 156 deleting a procedure parameter 53 deleting a source library 155

deleting library entries (\$MAINT) all entries of one type 169 example 179 all entries with names that begin with certain characters 159 example 179 all temporary or permanent entries of a certain type 159 an entry from a library 159 example 177 library entries 159 temporary or permanent entries with names beginning with certain characters 159 deleting one of several files having the same name (\$DELET) 125 DENSITY parameter FILE statement 47 VOL statement 90, 91 DEVICE parameter for the FORMS statement (OCL) 27 direct file attributes 134 DIRSIZE parameter for ALLOCATE statement (\$MAINT) 152 Disk Copy/Dump program 127 COPYFILE statement (see COPYFILE statement) copying multivolume files (see copying multivolume files) COPYPACK statement (see COPYPACK statement) examples 137 OCL considerations 135 SELECT statement (see SELECT statement) disk drive capacity 100 disk file compatibility 191 Disk Initialization program 97 clear ininitalization 100 disk drive capacity 100 examples 102 messages 103 OCL considerations 102 primary initialization 100 secondary initialization 100 UIN statement (see UIN statement) VOL statement (see VOL statement) Disk System 3 **DISPLAY statement (\$LABEL)** control statement summary 115 LABEL parameter 116 parameter summary 115 UNIT parameter 116 DISP parameter for the REBUILD statement 112 dual programming feature 74 additional space 156 considerations 77 loading programs in a DPF environment (see Loading programs in a DPF environment) dumping disk to tape 139 Dump/Restore program 139 COPYPACK statement 139 FROM parameter 140 OCL considerations 141 TO parameter 140

end-of-data (see /* statement) END parameter, FILE statement 47 END statement 86 ERASE parameter for the UIN statement 101 examples CALL statement 51 changing the size of a source library 154 characters from the source library on disk 26 characters from the system input device 26 COMPILE statement 23 conditional assignment 109 copying a file from one disk to another 137 copying an entire disk 137 copying disk file to library 178 copying minimum system from one disk to another 176 copying object programs to F1 177 correcting characters on an alternate track 113 creating both source and object libraries on a disk 176 DATE statement 16 deleting all entries of one type 179 deleting all entries with names beginning with certain characters 179 deleting an entry from a library 177 deleting one of several files having the same name 125 deleting the object library from a disk 176 **FILE** statement disk 33-42 tape 44 FORMS statement 27 inserting a statement in a source module 180 LOAD statement 17 nested procedures 55 primary initialization of two disks 102 printing library directories 177 printing part of a file 138 printing VTOC information for two files 120 printout of Tape Initialization program 92 printout of Tape Error Summary program 95 procedures 53 removing source statements from a module 179 renaming a set of source statements in a source library 180 reorganizing the system pack 181 replacing statement in a procedure 180 external indicators 21

File and Volume Label Display program 115 DISPLAY statement (see DISPLAY statement) examples 120 OCL considerations 119 File Delete program 121 examples 125 OCL considerations 125 REMOVE statement (see REMOVE statement) SCRATCH statement (see SCRATCH statement) file names used in the FILE statement 34 FILE statement (OCL) ASCII parameter 48 BLKL parameter 46 CONVERT 48

DATE parameter disk 39 tape 46 DEFER parameter 48 DENSITY parameter 47 END parameter 47 example 40-42 file processing considerations 42 format 33 function 33 HIKEY parameter 39, 67 LABEL parameter disk 36 tape 45 LOCATION parameter 37, 67 NAME parameter disk 33 tape 43 PACK parameter 36, 65 PARITY 48 packed HIKEY parameter 68 placement 33 RECL parameter 46 REEL parameter 45 **RETAIN** parameter disk 38, 67 tape 46 TRACKS or RECORDS parameter 36, 66 TRANSLATE 48 **UNIT** parameter disk 35,65 tape 44 FILE statement considerations for multivolume files 64 file-to-library copy function of Library Maintenance program 164 format of OCL statement * statement 31 /& statement 32 /* statement 32 BSCA statement 50 CALL statement 51 COMPILE statement 22 DATE statement 16 FILE statement 33 FORMS statement 27 HALT statement 31 IMAGE statement 24 LOAD statement 17 LOCKOUT statement 52 LOG statement 28 NOHALT statement 31 PARTITION statement 52, 76 PAUSE statement 32 PUNCH statement 30 **READER statement** 29 RUN statement 20 SWITCH statement 21 format parameter for the IMAGE statement CHAR 24 HEX 24 **MEM 25**

FORMS statement (OCL) 27 **FROM** parameter COPY statement 161 COPYPACK statement (\$COPY) 129 COPYPACK statement (\$DCOPY) 139 DELETE statement 170 MODIFY function 173 RENAME statement 174 function of OCL statements (see desired statement type) gaps in the object library 148 general form of OCL statements 5 HALT statement (OCL) 31 HEX, format parameter for the IMAGE statement 24 HIKEY parameter for the FILE statement 39, 67 packed 68 IBM System/3 Standard Character Set 187 ID parameter, VOL statement 90, 98 IMAGE statement (OCL) 24-26 including comments in OCL statement 8 including system programs in a library 152 incorrect data 108 INCR parameters of MODIFY statement 173 indicating the number of lines per page the printer will print 27 indicator-settings parameter for the SWITCH statement 21 initializing disks 97 initializing tapes 89 input device, changing (see READER statement) input/output devices in a DPF environment 74 INSERT statement (\$MAINT) control statement summary 172 functions 171 parameters 174 inserting source library entries 171 IPL (Initial Program Load) 3 job stream 4 relationship to OCL 4 sample 4 keyword 6 keyword parameter 6 LABEL parameter DISPLAY statement 115 **FILE** statement disk 36 tape 45 REMOVE statement 122

SCRATCH statement 122

length of names given to library entries 163

LENGTH parameter for the REBUILD statement 112

library description 148 library directory printouts object library 166 source library 166 system directory 168 library entries removing temporary 151 library maintenance allocate restrictions 151 Library Maintenance program 147 ALLOCATE statement (see ALLOCATE statement) COPY statement (see COPY statement) DELETE statement (see DELETE statement) examples 175-181 library description 148 MODIFY statement 171 OCL considerations 175 RENAME statement (see RENAME statement) library, object (see object library) library, source (see source library) LIBRARY parameter COPY statement 161 DELETE statement 169 MODIFY statement 173 RENAME statement 174 library, source (see source library) library-to-card considerations for the copy function of the Library Maintenance program 165 library-to-library considerations for the copy function of the Library Maintenance program 164 library-to-printer considerations for the copy function of the Library Maintenance program 165 LIST parameter of MODIFY statement 173 listing source library statements 171 LOAD * statement (OCL) 17 loading and running programs 61 IBM programs 61 object programs using card files 61 object programs using more than one disk file 62 object programs using one disk file 61 object programs using one disk file and external indicators 62 loading existing split cylinder files 72 loading object programs from the system input device 17 loading programs from disk 17 loading programs in a DPF environment 74 DATE statement 74 FORMS statement 75 HALT statement 75 IMAGE statement 75 LOAD statement 75 LOG statement 74 NOHALT statement 75 PARTITION statement (see PARTITION statement) planning information 76 sample job streams 77 LOAD statement (OCL) 17 * parameter 17 example 17 format 17 function 17 placement 17 program-name parameter 17 UNIT parameter 19

location of object library 155 location of source library 154 LOCATION parameter for the FILE statement 37, 67 LOG statement (OCL) 28 use in checkpoint/restart 79 logging device 28

magnetic tape (see tape, magnetic) maintaining correct relative record number when copying multivolume files 134 maintaining proper volume sequence numbers when copying multivolume files 134 maximum number of levels that can be nested together 56 maximum number of utility control statements in a procedure 53 MEM, format parameter for the IMAGE statement 25 messages Alternate Track Assignment program 110 Disk Initialization program 103 Dump/Restore 143 Tape Initialization 90 MFCU1 parameter PUNCH statement 30 **READER statement** 29 MFCU2 parameter PUNCH statement 30 READER statement 29 MODIFY statement (\$MAINT) control statement summary 172 functions 171 parameters 173 moving object library 151 multivolume files copying 134 disk 64 file statement considerations 65-68 tape 69 naming library entries characters to use 163 length 163 restrictions 163 name of entry to be deleted 169 name of entry to be renamed 174 NAME360 parameter VOL statement 102 NAME parameter COPY statement 161 DELETE statement 170 **FILE** statement disk 33 tape 43 IMAGE statement 24 **RENAME statement** 175 nested procedures 55 advantages 55 examples 57 maximum number of levels that can be nested 56 rules 57

NEWNAME parameter COPY statement 162 RENAME statement 175 new name to be given to an entry 163 rules 163 NEWVTOC statement (\$VTOC) 184 NOHALT statement (OCL) 31 normal procedure call 53 number of alternate tracks on a disk 105 NUMBER parameter for the IMAGE statement 24 object library changing size 153 creating 152 deleting 156 gaps 148 location 155 moving 151 organization 153 reorganizing 153 **OBJECT** parameter ALLOCATE statement 150 COMPILE statement 23 OCL considerations for utility programs Alternate Track Assignment program 109 Alternate Track Rebuild program 113 Disk Copy/Dump program 135 Disk Initialization program 102 Dump/Restore 141 File and Volume Label Display program 119 File Delete program 125 Library Maintenance program 175 Tape Error Summary program 96 Tape Initialization program 91 5445 Data Interchange Utility program 185 OCL parameters summary 12–15 OCL statement * statement 31 /& statement 32 /* statement 32 BSCA 48 CALL statement 51 COMPILE statement 22 DATE statement 16 FILE statement 33 FORMS statement 27 HALT statement 31 IMAGE statement 24 LOAD statement 17 LOCKOUT 52 LOG statement 28 NOHALT statement 31 PARTITION statement 52, 76 PAUSE statement 32 PUNCH statement 30 **READER statement** 29 RUN statement 20 SWITCH statement 21 OCL statement summary 9 OFF parameter for the LOG statement 28

OMIT parameter for the COPYFILE statement 132 ON parameter for the LOG statement 28 organization of the object library 148 organization of the source library 148 OUTPTX parameter for the COPYFILE statement 129 OUTPUT parameter for the COPYFILE statement 129 PACK parameter ALT statement 107 FILE statement 34, 65 NEWVTOC statement 185 REBUILD statement 112 REMOVE statement 123 SCRATCH statement 123 UPDATE statement 184 VOL statement 102 parameter 5 keyword 6 table of parameters 12-15 parameter summary of utility control statements ALLOCATE statement 150 ALT statement 106 COPY statement 161-162 COPYFILE statement 129 COPYPACK statement 129 DELETE statement 170 DISPLAY statement 115 INSERT statement 172 MODIFY statement 173 REBUILD statement 111 REMOVE statement 172 RENAME statement 174 REPLACE statement 172 SCRATCH statement 122 SELECT statement 128 UIN statement 99 VOL statement \$INIT 99 \$TINIT 90 PARITY seven track tape 48 PARTITION statement (OCL) 75, 76 use in checkpoint/restart 79 PAUSE statement (OCL) 32 permanent file 38 changing to a scratch file 38 placement of OCL statements (see the desired statement type) primary initialization 100 example 102 printer chain image (see IMAGE statement) printer forms (see FORMS statement) PRINTER parameter for the LOG statement 28 printing file information from the VTOC 115 printing files 133 example 138 printing library directories 165-167 example 177 printing records using record keys 134 printing records using relative record numbers 134 printing the entire contents of the VTOC 116

procedure-name parameter for the CALL statement 51 procedure override statement 53 procedures 53 adding a missing parameter 54 adding a statement 54, 171 changing procedure parameters 53, 171 deleting a procedure parameter 53, 171 example 53, 179-180 inserting statements 171 listing 171 modifying 171 nested 55 normal procedure call 53 procedure override statement 53 removing statements 171 replacing statements 171 processing large indexed files 63 processing multivolume files 64-70 program-name parameter for the LOAD statement 17 program size 77 PUNCH statement (OCL) 30 READER statement (OCL) 29 reader-to-library copy function of the Library Maintenance program 164 **REBUILD statement (\$BUILD)** control statement summary 111 DISP parameter 112 LENGTH parameter 112 PACK parameter 112 parameter summary 111 TRACK parameter 112 UNIT parameter 112 RECFM parameter, FILE statement 47 RECL parameter, FILE statement 46 RECORDS parameter for the FILE statement 36, 60 records-tracks conversion 189 **REEL** parameter FILE statement 44, 70 VOL statement 90 relationship of OCL to the job stream 4 **REMOVE statement (\$DELET)** control statement summary 122 DATA parameter 124 DATE parameter 124 LABEL parameter 123 PACK parameter 123 parameter summary 123 UNIT parameter 123 **REMOVE statement (\$MAINT)** control statement summary 172 functions 171 parameters 173 removing files from a disk 121 removing source library statements 171 removing temporary library entries 151 **RENAME statement (\$MAINT)** control statement summary 174 FROM parameter 174 function 174

LIBRARY parameter 174 NAME parameter 175 NEWNAME parameter 175 parameter summary 175 renaming a set of source statements in a source library 174 example 180 REORG parameter for the COPYFILE statement 133 reorganizing a source library 155 reorganizing an object library 156 reorganizing the system pack 181 **REPLACE statement (\$MAINT)** control statement summary 172 functions 171 parameters 174 replacing existing library entries 164 replacing incorrect data 111 replacing source library entries 171 replacing statements in a procedure 180 replacing the printer chain 24 RESER parameter of MODIFY statement 173 reserializing a source library entry 171 restarting checkpointed program 79 restrictions, library maintenance 151 restrictions on naming library entries 151 restrictions on split cylinder files 71 restrictions using Library Maintenance 139 **RETAIN** parameter COPY statement 163 DELETE statement 170 **FILE** statement disk 33.67 tape 43 retrieving a scratch file 38 rules for nested procedures 57 RUN statement (OCL) 20 sample job stream 4 sample statements for compiling and storing source programs in the object library 74 scratch file changing a permanent file to a scratch file 38 changing a scratch file to a temporary file 38 changing a temporary file to a scratch file 38 split cylinder 72 scratching a file 38, 121 SCRATCH statement (\$DELET) control statement summary 122 DATE parameter 124 LABEL parameter 123 PACK parameter 123 parameter summary 123 UNIT parameter 123 secondary initialization 100 SELECT KEY for the SELECT statement 133 SELECT PKY for the SELECT statement 133 SELECT RECORD for the SELECT statement 134 SELECT statement (\$COPY) control statement summary 128 FROM parameter 134 parameter summary 129 SELECT KEY 135 SELECT RECORD 135 TO parameter 135

SEQFLD parameter of MODIFY statement 173 sequence numbers in MODIFY functions 173 setting external indicators 21 size of DPF programs 74 size parameter for the PARTITION statement 52, 76 source library adding entries 171 changing size 154 creating 154 deleting 155 inserting entries 171 listing entries 171 location 156 organization 148 removing entries 171 reorganizing 155 replacing entries 171 reserializing entries 171 SOURCE parameter ALLOCATE statement 152 COMPILE statement 22 special meaning of capital letters, numbers, and special characters 87 split cylinder files 71-72 SPLIT cylinder files 71-72 SPLIT parameter for the FILE statement 39 starting the logging device 28 statement descriptions (OCL) 9 statement examples (OCL) 80-83 statement identifier 5 statements beginning with // 6 statements beginning with other than // 7 stopping the logging device 5 storing and compiling source programs in the object library 73 sample statements 74 substitute data 112 summary of OCL parameters 12-15 summary of OCL statements 9 surface analysis 101, 107 SWITCH statement (OCL) 21 system date 16 system directory 168 system input device 29 changing 29 SYSTEM parameter for the ALLOCATE statement 152 system punch device (see PUNCH statement) System/360-System/370 packs 191

table of OCL statements 10-11 table of parameters 12-15 Tape Error Summary program 95 Tape Initialization program 89 tape, magnetic error logging 95 FILE statement 43 initialization 89 multivolume files 70 telling the system not to halt 31 telling the system to halt 31

temporary file 38 changing a scratch file to a temporary file 38 changing a temporary file to a scratch file 38 temporary library entries 151 TO parameter ALLOCATE statement 152 COPY statement 160 COPYPACK statement 128 MODIFY function 173 TRACKS parameter for the FILE statement 36, 66 TRACKS parameter for the REBUILD statement 112 TRANSLATE seven track tape 48 **TYPE** parameter UIN statement 100 VOL statement 90 types of directory entries 166 types of library entries 148 UIN statement (\$INIT) CAP parameter 101 control statement summary 98 ERASE parameter 101 parameter summary 99 TYPE parameter 100 UNIT parameter 100 VERIFY parameter 101 UNASSIGN parameter for the ALT statement 108 unconditional assignment 108 **UNIT** parameter ALT statement 107 COMPILE statement 22 DISPLAY statement 116 **FILE** statement

VERIFY parameter ALT statement 107 UIN statement 101 VOL statement (\$INIT) control statement summary 98 ID parameter 102 PACK parameter 101 parameter summary 99

disk 34, 65 44, 70

NEWVTOC statement 184

REBUILD statement 111

REMOVE statement 122

SCRATCH statement 122 UIN statement 100

UPDATE statement 184

VOL statement 90

CALL statement 51

IMAGE statement 25

LOAD statement 19

UPDATE statement 184

tape

unit parameter

using OCL 59

VOL statement (\$TINIT) control statement summary 90 parameters 90 VTOC (volume table of contents) LABEL parameter 116 System/3 115–120 System/360–370 183

work area Disk Copy/Dump program 133 Library Maintenance program 153 WORK parameter ALLOCATE statement 153 COPYFILE statement 133 MODIFY statement 173 writing utility control statements 85 coding rules 86 control statements 86 END statement 86

1442 parameter
PUNCH statement 30
READER statement 29
5445 Data Interchange Utility program 183

.

READER'S COMMENT FORM

GC21-7512-6

IBM System/3 Model 10 Disk System Control Programming Reference Manual

YOUR COMMENTS, PLEASE...

Your comments concerning this publication will help us produce better publications for your use. Each reply will be carefully reviewed by the persons responsible for writing and publishing this material. All comments and suggestions become the property of IBM.

Note: Please direct any requests for copies of publications, or for assistance in using your IBM system, to your IBM representative or to the IBM branch office serving your locality.